

### **INSTRUCTION MANUAL**





Icom Inc.

### IMPORTANT

**READ THIS INSTRUCTION MANUAL CAREFULLY** before attempting to operate the transceiver.

**SAVE THIS INSTRUCTION MANUAL.** This manual contains important safety and operating instructions for the IC-7000.

### FOREWORD

We understand that you have a choice of many different radios in the market place. We want to take a couple of moments of your time to thank you for making the IC-7000 your radio of choice, and hope you agree with Icom's philosophy of "technology first." Many hours of research and development went into the design of your IC-7000.

### ♦ FEATURES

O IF DSP features

- All mode capability covering 160–2 m and 70 cm (depending on version)
- O Compact with detachable front panel
- O ±0.5 ppm of high frequency stability
- O Baudot RTTY demodulator
- O Simple band scope function
- Selectable SSB transmission passband width (For both higher and lower pass frequency)
- O Standard voice synthesizer/voice recorder

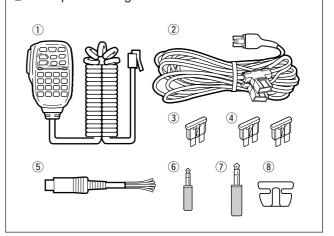
### EXPLICIT DEFINITIONS

WORD	DEFINITION		
	Personal injury, fire hazard or electric shock may occur.		
CAUTION	Equipment damage may occur.		
NOTE	If disregarded, inconvenience only. No risk or personal injury, fire or electric shock.		

### SUPPLIED ACCESSORIES

The transceiver comes with the following accessories.

	Qty.
① Hand microphone (HM-151)	1
② DC power cable (OPC-1457)	1
③ Spare fuse (ATC 5 A)	1
④ Spare fuse (ATC 30 A)	2
(5) ACC cable	1
6 3.5 (d) mm plug	
⑦ 6.5 (d) mm Electronic keyer plug	
Microphone hanger	1

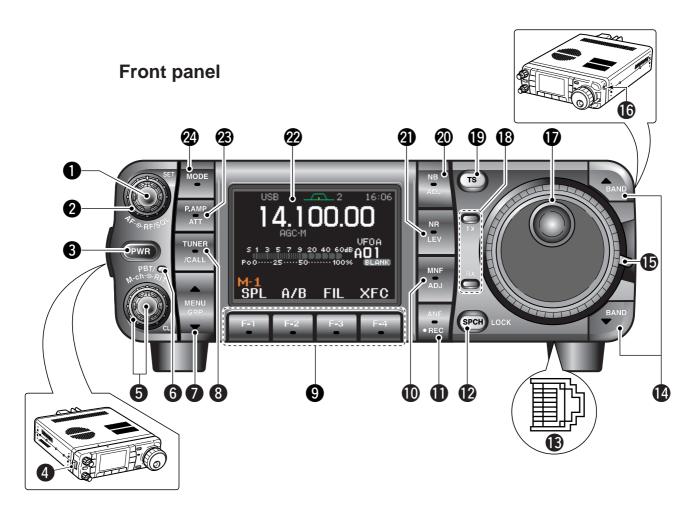


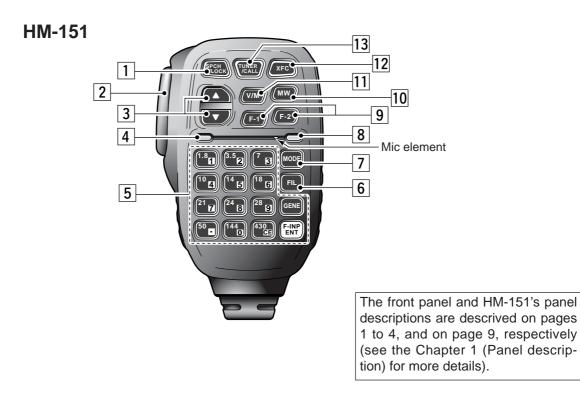
Spurious signals may be received near the following frequencies. These are created in the internal circuit and does not indicate a transceiver malfunction:

52.76497 MHz, 443.03535 MHz Icom, Icom Inc. and the  $^{\circ}$ com logo are registered trademarks of Icom Incorporated (Japan) in the United States, the United Kingdom, Germany, France, Spain, Russia and/or other countries.



### **ILLUSTRATIONS**





### Front panel

(inner control; p. 33)

**RF GAIN CONTROL/SQUELCH CONTROL** [RF/SQL] (outer control; p. 35)

BOWER KEY [PWR] (p. 25)

- **GRONT PANEL LATCH** (p. 16)
- PASSBAND TUNING/M-ch/RIT CONTROLS [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (pgs. 73, 77, 86, 100, 104)
- **6 TWIN PBT (M-ch/RIT) INDICATOR** (pgs. 73, 77, 86, 100)
- MENU/GROUP KEYS [MENU/GRP] (p. 151)
- TUNER/CALL KEY [TUNER/CALL] (pgs. 100, 114)
- **MULTI-FUNCTION KEYS [F1]/[F2]/[F3]/[F4]** (pgs. 5–8, 151)
- (p. 81) MANUAL NOTCH KEY [MNF/ADJ] (p. 81)
- AUTO NOTCH/VOICE RECORDER KEY [ANF/• REC] (pgs. 80, 93)
- **PSPCH/LOCK KEY [SPCH/LOCK]** (pgs. 34, 37)

(P. 10)

- **(**UP/DOWN (BAND) KEYS [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)]
- **()** MAIN DIAL TENSION LATCH
- (p. 18)
- MAIN DIAL [DIAL]
- RECEIVE/TRANSMIT INDICATORS [RX]/[TX]
- TUNING STEP KEY [TS] (pgs. 30–32)
- **ONOISE BLANKER KEY [NB/ADJ]** (p. 78)
- **(D) NOISE REDUCTION KEY [NR/LEV]** (p. 79)

**WALL OF CONTINUES AND ADDRESS AND** 

PRE AMP/ATTENUATOR KEY [P.AMP/ATT] (p. 72)

**@ MODE KEY [MODE]** (p. 34)

### ■ Microphone (HM-151)

1 SPCH/LOCK KEY [SPCH/LOCK] (p. 34, 37)

- 2 PTT SWITCH [PTT] (p. 37)
- **3 UP/DOWN SWITCHES [▲]/[▼]**
- 4 TRANSMIT INDICATOR (p. 37)
- 5 KEYPAD (pgs. 28, 29)
- 6 FILTER SELECTION [FIL] (p. 75)
- 7 MODE KEY [MODE] (p. 34)
- **8 POWER INDICATOR**
- 9 PROGRAMMABLE FUNCTION KEYS [F-1]/[F-2]
- 10 MEMORY WRITE [MW] (pgs. 101, 102)
- 11 VFO/MEMORY SELECTION [V/M] (pgs. 27, 100, 107)
- 12 TRANSMIT FREQUENCY CHECK [XFC] (pgs. 65, 89)
- I3 TUNER/CALL KEY [TUNER/CALL] (pgs. 100, 114)

### PRECAUTIONS

▲ WARNING RF EXPOSURE! This device emits Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Extreme caution should be observed when operating this device. If you have any questions regarding RF exposure and safety standards please refer to the Federal Communications Commission Office of Engineering and Technology's report on Evaluating Compliance with FCC Guidelines for Human Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields (OET Bulletin 65).

A WARNING HIGH VOLTAGE! NEVER touch an antenna or internal antenna connector during transmission. This may result in an electrical shock or burn.

**WARNING! NEVER** operate the transceiver while driving a vehicle. Safe driving requires your full attention—anything less may result in an accident.

△ **NEVER** apply AC power to the [DC13.8V] socket on the transceiver rear panel. This could cause a fire or damage the transceiver.

▲ **NEVER** apply more than 16 V DC, such as a 24 V battery, to the [DC13.8V] socket on the transceiver rear panel. This could cause a fire or damage the transceiver.

▲ **NEVER** let metal, wire or other objects touch any internal part or connectors on the rear panel of the transceiver. This may result in an electric shock or this could cause a fire or damege the transceiver.

▲ **NEVER** connect or use the supplied HM-151 (microphone) with other transceiver. This could cause damage to the transceiver. The HM-151 is designed for use with the IC-7000 **ONLY**.

**NEVER** expose the transceiver to rain, snow or any liquids.

**AVOID** using or placing the transceiver in areas with temperatures below  $-10^{\circ}$ C ( $+14^{\circ}$ F) or above  $+60^{\circ}$ C ( $+140^{\circ}$ F). Be aware that temperatures on a vehicle's dashboard can exceed  $+80^{\circ}$ C ( $+176^{\circ}$ F), resulting in permanent damage to the transceiver if left there for extended periods.

**AVOID** placing the transceiver in excessively dusty environments or in direct sunlight.

**AVOID** placing the transceiver against walls or putting anything on top of the transceiver. This will obstruct heat dissipation.

Place unit in a secure place to avoid inadvertent use by children.

During mobile operation, **NEVER** place the transceiver where air bag deployment may be obstructed.

During mobile operation, **DO NOT** place the transceiver where hot or cold air blows directly onto it.

During mobile operation, **DO NOT** operate the transceiver without running the vehicle's engine. When the transceiver's power is ON and your vehicle's engine is OFF, the vehicle's battery will soon become exhausted.

Make sure the transceiver power is OFF before starting the vehicle engine. This will avoid possible damage to the transceiver by ignition voltage spikes.

During maritime mobile operation, keep the transceiver and microphone as far away as possible from the magnetic navigation compass to prevent erroneous indications.

BE CAREFUL! The rear panel will become hot when operating the transceiver continuously for long periods.

BE CAREFUL! If a linear amplifier is connected, set the transceiver's RF output power to less than the linear amplifier's maximum input level, otherwise, the linear amplifier will be damaged.

Use Icom microphones only (supplied or optional). Other manufacturer's microphones have different pin assignments, and connection to the IC-7000 may damage the transceiver.

#### For U.S.A. only

**Caution:** Changes or modifications to this transceiver, not expressly approved by Icom Inc., could void your authority to operate this transceiver under FCC regulations.

FOREWORD       i-         EXPLICIT DEFINITIONS       i-         SUPPLIED ACCESSORIES       i-         ILLUSTRATIONS       i-         Front panel       i-         Microphone (HM-151)       i-         PRECAUTIONS       i-         TABLE OF CONTENTS       i         1 PANEL DESCRIPTION       1-14         Front panel       i         Multi-function keys       i $\diamond$ Menu M-1 functions       i $\diamond$ Menu M-2 functions       i $\diamond$ Menu M-3 functions       i $\diamond$ Menu S-1 functions       i	1 1 2 3 3 ii ii 4 1 5 5
SUPPLIED ACCESSORIESi- ILLUSTRATIONSi- ■ Front paneli- ■ Microphone (HM-151)i- PRECAUTIONS TABLE OF CONTENTSii 1 PANEL DESCRIPTION1-14 ■ Front panel ● Menu M-1 functions	<b>1</b> <b>2</b> <b>3</b> <b>3</b> <b>ii</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>5</b>
<ul> <li>■ Front panel</li> <li>■ Microphone (HM-151)</li> <li>■ PRECAUTIONS</li> <li>■ TABLE OF CONTENTS</li> <li>■ 1 PANEL DESCRIPTION</li> <li>■ Front panel</li> <li>■ Multi-function keys</li> <li>◇ Menu M-1 functions</li> <li>◇ Menu M-2 functions</li> <li>◇ Menu M-3 functions</li> </ul>	3 3 ii 4 1 5 5
<ul> <li>Microphone (HM-151)</li> <li>PRECAUTIONS</li> <li>TABLE OF CONTENTS</li> <li>I PANEL DESCRIPTION</li> <li>I-14</li> <li>Front panel</li> <li>Multi-function keys</li> <li>♦ Menu M-1 functions</li> <li>♦ Menu M-2 functions</li> <li>♦ Menu M-3 functions</li> </ul>	3 ii 4 1 5 5
PRECAUTIONS	ii ii 4 1 5 5
TABLE OF CONTENTS       iiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiii	<b>ii</b> <b>4</b> 1 5 5
1 PANEL DESCRIPTION	<b>4</b> 1 5 5
<ul> <li>Front panel</li> <li>Multi-function keys</li> <li>Menu M-1 functions</li> <li>Menu M-2 functions</li> <li>Menu M-3 functions</li> </ul>	1 5 5
<ul> <li>Multi-function keys</li> <li>Menu M-1 functions</li> <li>Menu M-2 functions</li> <li>Menu M-3 functions</li> </ul>	5 5
<ul> <li>♦ Menu M-1 functions</li> <li>♦ Menu M-2 functions</li> <li>♦ Menu M-3 functions</li> </ul>	5
<ul> <li>♦ Menu M-2 functions</li> <li>♦ Menu M-3 functions</li> </ul>	
♦ Menu M-3 functions	F
♦ Menu S-2 functions	
♦ Menu S-3 functions	
♦ Menu G-1 (Scope) functions	
■Microphone (HM-151)	
♦ Microphone connector	
■ Rear panel	
♦ ACC socket	
■ Function display	
2 INSTALLATION AND CONNECTIONS 15-24	
■Unpacking 1 ■Selecting a location1	
Grounding	
Antenna connection	
■Installation1	
•	
Power supply connections	
Connecting a DC power supply	
Battery connections 1	
	0
External antenna tuners	
Linear amplifier connections 2	1
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2 3
■ Linear amplifier connections	1 2 3 3
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2 3 3 3
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2 3 3 4 4
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2 3 3 4 4 4
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2 3 3 4 4 4
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2 3 3 3 4 4 4 4
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	1 2 3 3 3 4 4 4 4 8
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li></ul>	123334444 <b>8</b> 55
<ul> <li>Linear amplifier connections</li> <li>Connections for CW</li> <li>Connections for RTTY</li> <li>Connections for RTTY (FSK)</li> <li>Connections for RTTY (AFSK)</li> <li>Connections for packet, SSTV or PSK31</li> <li>When connecting to [DATA] socket</li> <li>When connecting to [ACC] socket</li> <li>When connecting to [MIC] connector</li> <li>BASIC OPERATION</li> <li>When first applying power (CPU resetting)</li> </ul>	123334444 <b>8</b> 555
<ul> <li>Antenna connection.</li> <li>Installation</li> <li>Single body mounting</li> <li>Stand</li> <li>Front panel separation</li> <li>Front panel mounting</li> <li>Required connections.</li> <li>Advanced connections</li> </ul>	5 6 6 6 7 8

Differences between VFO and	
memory mode	
■VFO operation	
♦ Selecting VFO A/VFO B	
♦ VFO equalization	
Selecting VFO/memory mode	
Selecting an operating band	
Using the band stacking registers	28
Frequency setting	
♦ Tuning with the main dial	29
Direct frequency entry	
with the microphone's keypad	29
Programmable tuning step	30
♦ Selecting "kHz" step	30
♦ Selecting 1 Hz or 10 Hz step	
(SSB/CW/RTTY only)	31
♦ 1 MHz quick tuning step	
(FM/WFM/AM only)	31
♦ <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> tuning function (CW/RTTY only)	
♦ Auto tuning step function	
♦ Band edge warning beep	33
■ Volume setting	
■Operating mode selection	34
■ Voice synthesizer function	34
■ Squelch and receive (RF) sensitivity	
Meter function	
♦ Multi-function meter	36
■Lock functions	
♦ Dial lock function	
♦ Microphone lock function	
<ul> <li>Microphone lock function</li> <li>Basic transmit operation</li> </ul>	37
Basic transmit operation	37 37
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation</li> <li>Transmitting</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation</li> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation</li> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation</li> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul> 4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation</li> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT</li> <li>Operating SSB</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li></ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT</li> <li>Operating SSB</li></ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT         <ul> <li>Operating SSB.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit</li> <li>About 5 MHz band operation</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT         <ul> <li>Operating SSB.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit</li> <li>About 5 MHz band operation (USA version only)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT         <ul> <li>Operating SSB.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit</li> <li>About 5 MHz band operation (USA version only)</li> <li>Operating CW</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT</li> <li>Operating SSB</li></ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 40 40 40 41 41 42 42 43
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT         <ul> <li>Operating SSB.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>About 5 MHz band operation (USA version only)</li> <li>Operating CW</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>CW reverse mode</li> <li>CW side tone function.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 40 40 40 41 41 42 42 43 43
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 41 41 42 42 43 43 43 44
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 41 41 42 42 42 43 43 43 44 45
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 41 42 42 42 43 43 43 43 44 45 46
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 40 40 40 41 40 41 42 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 44 45 46 47
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT         <ul> <li>Operating SSB.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>About 5 MHz band operation (USA version only)</li> <li>Operating CW</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>CW reverse mode</li> <li>CW side tone function.</li> <li>CW pitch control</li> <li>Electronic CW keyer</li> <li>Memory keyer send menu</li> <li>Editing a keyer memory</li> <li>Contest number set mode</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 40 40 40 40 40 41 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 44 45 46 47 48
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT         <ul> <li>Operating SSB.</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>About 5 MHz band operation (USA version only)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Operating CW         <ul> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for receive</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>Convenient functions for transmit.</li> <li>CW reverse mode</li> <li>CW side tone function.</li> <li>CW pitch control</li> <li>Electronic CW keyer</li> <li>Memory keyer send menu</li> <li>Editing a keyer memory</li> <li>Contest number set mode</li> <li>Number Style</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 40 40 40 40 40 40 41 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 44 45 46 46 47 48
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 40 41 42 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 44 45 46 47 48 48 48
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 40 41 41 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 44 45 46 47 48 48 48 48
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 40 41 42 42 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 44 45 46 47 48 48 48 48 48 48
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 41 42 42 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 44 45 46 47 48 48 48 48 48 49 49
<ul> <li>Basic transmit operation         <ul> <li>Transmitting</li> <li>Setting output power</li> <li>Setting microphone gain</li></ul></li></ul>	37 37 38 38 38 39 39 39 39 39 40 40 40 40 41 42 42 42 42 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43 43

4 Paddle Polarity	50
5 Keyer Type	50
6 MIC U/D Keyer (HM-103)	50
♦ Paddle operation from [MIC] connector	50
■Operating RTTY (FSK)	
♦ Convenient functions for receive	52
♦ RTTY reverse mode	53
♦ Twin peak filter	53
♦ Functions for the RTTY decoder indication.	54
♦ Setting the decoder threshold level	54
♦ RTTY decode set mode	
1 RTTY Decode USOS	
2 RTTY Decode New Line Code	
♦ Pre-setting for using RTTY terminal or TNC .	
■Operating AM	
♦ Convenient functions for receive	57
♦ Convenient functions for transmit	
■Operating FM	
♦ Convenient functions for receive	
♦ Convenient functions for transmit	
♦ Tone squelch operation	
♦ DTCS operation	
♦ Tone scan operation	
Repeater operation	
♦ One-touch repeater function	
♦ Repeater tone frequency	
♦ Transmit frequency monitor check	
♦ Auto repeater function (USA version only) .	
♦ Storing a non standard repeater	
■ 1750 Hz tone burst	
DTMF memory encoder	67
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li> <li>DTMF send menu</li> </ul>	67 67
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li> <li>DTMF send menu</li> <li>Programming a DTMF code</li> </ul>	67 67 68
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li> <li>DTMF send menu</li> </ul>	67 67 68
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 <b> 68</b>
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 <b>82</b> 69 70
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 71
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 <b>82</b> 69 70 71 71 72
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 71 72 72
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 71 72 72 72
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 71 72 72 72 72
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 71 72 72 72 72 72 72
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 73
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 73 74
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 73 74 74
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 73 74 74 74
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 74 74 74 75
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 74 74 74 75
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 70 71 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 73 74 74 75 75
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 73 74 74 75 75 76
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 74 74 75 76 76 76
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 73 74 74 75 76 76 76 76 77
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 72 73 74 74 75 76 76 77 78
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 75 76 76 76 76 76 75 75 76 76 76 76 76 77 76 77 77 75 76 77 77 78 76 77 78 78 78 78
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 75 76 77 77 75 76 77 78 77 77 78 77 78 77 78 77 78 77 78 77 77 77 77 77 77 75 75 77 78 78 78 78 78 78
<ul> <li>DTMF memory encoder</li></ul>	67 67 68 68 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 75 76 77 77 75 76 77 78 77 77 78 77 78 77 78 77 78 77 78 77 77 77 77 77 77 75 75 77 78 78 78 78 78 78

■Noise reduction	
♦ Noise reduction set mode	
<ul> <li>→ NR Level</li> <li>■ Notch function</li> </ul>	
◆ Auto notch function	
♦ Manual notch function	
♦ Manual notch filter set mode	
■ Voice squelch control function	
Meter peak hold function	82
6 FUNCTIONS FOR TRANSMIT	-92
■VOX function	
♦ Adjusting the VOX function	
♦ VOX set mode	
1 VOX Gain	
2 Anti-VOX	
3 VOX Delay	
<ul> <li>Transmit filter width setting (SSB only)</li> <li>Break-in function</li> </ul>	04 85
Semi break-in operation	
♦ Full break-in operation	
■⊿TX function	
■ Monitor function	87
Speech compressor	
♦ Compression level setting	
← COMP Level	
<ul> <li>Split frequency operation</li> <li>Quick split function</li> </ul>	
♦ Split offset frequency setting	
♦ Quick split setting	
■Measuring SWR	
♦ Spot measurement	92
♦ Plot measurement	92
7 VOICE RECORDER FUNCTIONS93	-99
■ Digital voice recorder	93
Recording a received audio	
♦ Basic recording	
♦ One-touch voice recording	
<ul> <li>Playing the recorded contents</li> <li>Erasing the recorded contents</li> </ul>	
Recording a message for transmit	
♦ Recording	
♦ Confirming/Erasing the recorded message.	
Programming a memory name for transmit .	97
Sending a recorded message	
♦ Transmit level setting	
■ Voice set mode	
1 Auto Monitor	
2 MIC Memo	33
	99
8 MEMORY OPERATION100-	99 <b>-110</b>
8 MEMORY OPERATION	99 <b>-110</b> 100
8 MEMORY OPERATION	99 - <b>110</b> 100 100
<ul> <li>8 MEMORY OPERATION</li></ul>	99 - <b>110</b> 100 100 101
8 MEMORY OPERATION	99 - <b>110</b> 100 100 101 101

Selecting a memory channel using the memory channel list	
♦ Setting a memory channel	
as a select memory	
♦ Memory names	
Memory clearing	
Memory clearing using the memory channel list	
Frequency transferring	
♦ Transferring in VFO mode 107	
♦ Transferring in memory mode	
<ul> <li>Memo pads</li></ul>	
into memo pads 109	
$\diamond$ Calling up a frequency from a memo pad 110	
9 SCAN OPERATION	
Scan types 111	
Preparation 111	
Programmed scan operation	
<ul> <li>Memory scan operation</li></ul>	
Priority watch	
10 ANTENNA TUNER OPERATION 114–115	
■Optional AT-180 AUTOMATIC ANTENNA TUNER	
operation	
♦ Tuner operation	
<ul> <li>◇ Manual tuning</li></ul>	
operation	
♦ AH-4 operation 115	
11 PACKET OPERATION 116	
■Packet operation	
♦ Data socket	
<ul> <li>Adjusting the data speed</li></ul>	
from the TNC	
12 CLOCK AND TIMERS 117–119	
Time set mode	
1 Year 117	
2 Date	
3 Time (Now) 117 4 CLOCK2 Function 117	
5 CLOCK2 Offset	
6 Auto Power OFF 117	
♦ Setting the current year	
<ul> <li>♦ Setting the current date</li></ul>	
♦ Clock2 function activity	
♦ Clock2 offset setting 119	
♦ Auto power OFF activity 119	
13 SET MODE 120–136	
Set mode description 120	

Quick set mode	
➡ RF Power (all modes)	
➡ MIC Gain (SSB/AM/FM modes)	121
SSB TBW (WIDE) L (SSB mode)	121
SSB TBW (WIDE) H (SSB mode)	122
SSB TBW (MID) L (SSB mode)	122
SSB TBW (MID) H (SSB mode)	
SSB TBW (NAR) L (SSB mode)	122
SSB TBW (NAR) H (SSB mode)	
➡ Key Speed (CW mode)	
➡ CW Pitch (CW mode)	
Side Tone Level (CW mode)	
Side Tone Level Limit (CW mode)	
➡ Twin Peak Filter (RTTY mode)	
➡ RTTY Mark Frequency (RTTY mode)	
➡ RTTY Shift Width (RTTY mode)	123
➡ RTTY Keying Polarity (RTTY mode)	
	124
1 Contrast (LCD)	
2 Bright (LCD)	
<b>-</b> -	
5 Backlight (Switches)	
6 Display Type	
9 Meter Peak Hold	125
11 Filter Popup (FIL)	125
12 1 Hz Mode Popup	
13 Scope CENTER/FIX Popup	
14 TV Popup (CH Up/Down)	
15 TV Popup (P.AMP/ATT)	
16 Voice TX Name Display	
17 Keyer Memory Display	
18 DTMF Memory Display	
19 External Display	
20 Opening Message	
21 My Call	
22 Power ON Check	127
Miscellaneous (others) set mode	
1 Monitor	
2 Monitor Level	
3 Beep (Confirmation)	
4 Beep (Band edge)	
5 Beep Level	
6 Beep Level Limit	
7 RF/SQL Control	
8 Quick SPLIT	
9 SPLIT Offset	
10 SPLIT LOCK	
11 DUP Offset HF	
12 DUP Offset 50M	
13 DUP Offset 144M	
14 DUP Offset 430M	
15 One Touch Repeater	
16 Auto Repeater	130

17 Tuner (Auto Start)       130         18 Tuner (PTT start)       131         19 [TUNER] Switch       131         20 VSEND Select       131         21 SPEECH Level       131         22 SPEECH Speed       131         23 SPEECH Speed       131         24 SPEECH S-Level       132         25 SPEECH [MODE] Switch       132         26 Memopad Numbers       132         27 SCAN Speed       132         28 SCAN Resume       132         29 MAIN DIAL Auto TS       132         30 HM-151 [F-1]       133         31 HM-151 [F-2]       133         32 MIC Up/Down Speed       133         33 Quick RIT//ITX Clear       133         34 SSB/CW Synchronous Tuning       133         35 CW Normal Side       134         36 VOICE 1st Menu       134         37 KEYER 1st Menu       134         39 Mode Select (SSB)       134         40 Mode Select (CW)       134         41 Mode Select (RTTY)       134         42 Mode Select (FM)       135         43 Mode Select (FM)       135         44 Mode Select (FM)       135         45 External Keypad (VOICE)       135
50 CI-V Transceive 136 51 REF Adjust 136
14 MAINTENANCE137Fuse replacement137Memory backup137Cleaning137
15 TROUBLESHOOTING 138–139
<b>16 OPTIONAL UNITS SETTING 140–141</b> ■MB-106 CARRYING HANDLE
■ Band voltage modification
17 CONTROL COMMAND       142–147         ■ Remote jack (CI-V) information       142         ◇ CI-V connection example       142         ◇ Data format       142         ◇ Command table       142         ◇ To send/read memory contents       146         ◇ Band stacking register       146         ◇ Codes for memory keyer contents       146         ◇ Character codes for My Call       147

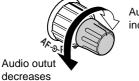
<ul> <li>Codes for memory name contents</li> <li>Split/Duplex frequency setting</li> <li>Repeater tone/tone squelch frequency setting</li> </ul>	147
♦ DTCS code and polarity setting	
18 SPECIFICATIONS	
■ Transmitter	148
Receiver	148
19 OPTIONS	149–150
20 MENU GUIDE	151–152

## PANEL DESCRIPTION

### Front panel

● AF GAIN CONTROL [AF(set)] (inner control; p. 33)

⇒ Rotate to vary the audio output level from the speaker or headphones.



Audio output increases

Push momentarily to enter the set mode menu. •Push again to exit the set mode menu.

#### **2** RF GAIN CONTROL/SQUELCH CONTROL

[RF/SQL] (outer control; p. 35)

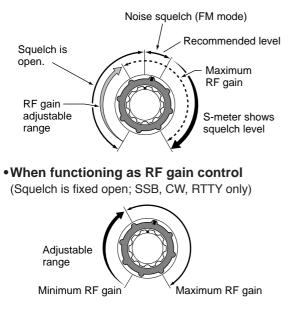
Adjusts the RF gain and squelch threshold level. The squelch, when closed, mutes the speaker or headphones when no signal is received, reducing noise.

- •The squelch is particularly effective for FM mode. It is also available in other modes.
- •12 to 1 o'clock position is recommended for any setting of the **[RF/SQL]** control.

• The control can be set to 'Auto' (RF gain control in SSB, CW and RTTY; squelch control in AM, FM and WFM) or squelch control (RF gain is fixed at maximum) in the miscellaneous (others) set mode as follows. (p. 129)

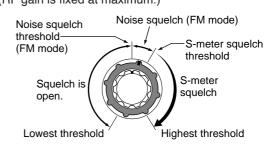
MODE	SET MODE SELECTION			SET MODE	
MODE	Auto		RF + SQL		
SSB, CW RTTY	RF GAIN	SQL	RF + SQL		
AM, FM WFM	SQL	SQL	RF + SQL		

#### •When functioning as RF gain/squelch control



See the illustration of the Front panel on page i-2.

### •When functioning as squelch control (RF gain is fixed at maximum.)



#### **BPOWER KEY [PWR]** (p. 25)

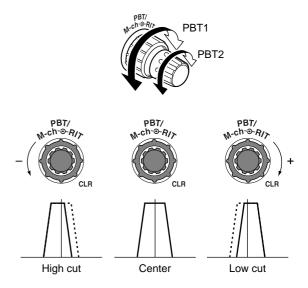
- While transceiver's power is OFF, push to turn the power ON.
  - •Turn the DC power supply ON in advance.
- While transceiver's power is ON, push and hold for 1 sec. to turn the power OFF.

#### **GRONT PANEL LATCH** (p. 16)

Pull away from the transceiver (towards yourself when looking at the front of the transceiver) to detach the front panel from the main body of the transceiver.

#### PASSBAND TUNING/M-ch/RIT CONTROLS [PBT/M-ch/RIT]

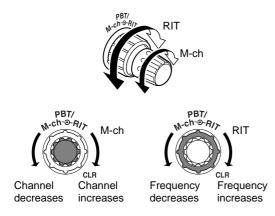
- Push inner control to toggle the twin Passband Tuning (PBT) or memory channel/RIT function ON and OFF.
- ➡ While Twin PBT is selected (p. 77):
  - Adjusts the receiver's DSP filter passband width.
    - Passband width and shift frequency are displayed on the LCD.
    - •The default variable range is half of the IF filter passband width. 25 Hz step is available.
  - Push and hold inner control for 1 sec. to return the PBT to default settings.



#### ✓ What is the PBT control?

PBT electronically narrows the IF passband width to reject interference. This transceiver uses DSP to implement PBT.

- ➡ While M-ch/RIT is selected:
  - Rotate the inner control to select a memory channel number (p. 100).
  - Push and hold inner control for 1 sec. to turn the RIT/ΔTX mode ON (pgs. 73, 86).
     Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to exit the RIT/ΔTX mode.
  - While the RIT/ATX mode is OFF: Rotate outer control to select a memory bank (p. 104).
  - While the RIT/ΔTX is ON: Rotate outer control to shift the receive or transmit frequency (pgs. 73, 86).
    - "IT or "IT indicators appear when the RIT or \Delta TX function is activate, respectively.
    - •The shift frequency range is  $\pm$  9.999 kHz in 1 Hz steps (or  $\pm$ 9.99 kHz in 10 Hz steps).



•When the RIT or ⊿TX function is ON, push and hold [F-1 RIT] or [F-2 ⊿TX] for 1 sec. to add or subtract the frequency shift to the display frequency.

#### ✓ What is the RIT function?

RIT (Receiver Incremental Tuning) shifts the receive frequency without shifting the transmit frequency.

This is useful for fine tuning for stations calling you off frequency or when you prefer to listen to slightly differentsounding voice characteristics, etc.

#### ✓ What is the ⊿TX function?

The  $\Delta$ TX shifts the transmit frequency without shifting the receive frequency. This is useful for simple split frequency operation in CW, etc.

#### **G**TWIN PBT (M-ch/RIT) INDICATOR

- (pgs. 73, 77, 86, 100)
- Indicates the status of [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (⑤) as the Twin PBT function or memory channel/RIT control.
  - Indicator is green when the Twin PBT is selected.
  - Indicator is off when the M-ch/RIT is selected.
  - •Indicator is orange when the RIT or  $\Delta$ TX function is activate.

#### **MENU/GROUP KEYS [MENU/GRP]** (p. 151)

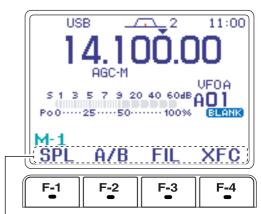
- ➡ Push either key one or more times to select menus within a menu group (M, 5 or G (Graphic)).
- ➡ Push and hold for 1 sec. to select one of the three menu groups: M-1 to M-3, S-1 to S-3 and G-1 (Scope) to G-3 (SWR meter).

#### **③**TUNER/CALL KEY [TUNER/CALL]

- ⇒ During HF/50 MHz operation (p. 114):
  - Push momentarily to toggle the automatic antenna tuner function ON and OFF.
     An optional antenna tuner must be connected.
    - "IIII]" indicator appears when the tuner is ON.
  - Push and hold for 2 sec. to manually tune the antenna.
    - An optional antenna tuner must be connected.
    - "TUNE" indicator appears when the tuner is ON.
- During 144/430 MHz operation (p. 100): Push momentarily to select the call channel (or return to the previous channel/frequency when
  - the call channel is already selected)."C1" is the 144 MHz call channel and "C2" is the 430 MHz call channel.

#### **9** MULTI-FUNCTION KEYS [F-1]/[F-2]/[F-3]/[F-4]

- Push to select the function indicated in the LCD display above these keys. (pgs. 5–8, 151)
  - $\ensuremath{\cdot}$  Functions vary depending on the active menu.



Functions appear

#### **(DMANUAL NOTCH KEY [MNF/ADJ]** (p. 81)

- Push momentarily to turn the manual notch function ON and OFF in SSB, CW and AM modes.
  - "The appears on the display when the function is activated.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the manual notch filter set mode.

#### What is the notch function?

The notch function is a narrow DSP filter that removes interfering tones from CW or AM signals while preserving the desired signal's frequency response.

#### AUTO NOTCH/VOICE RECORDER KEY [ANF/• REC]

- Push momentarily to turn the auto notch function (ANF) ON and OFF in SSB, AM, FM modes. (p. 80)
  - "" appears on the display when the function is activated.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to record the received signal's audio. (p. 93)

#### SPCH/LOCK KEY [SPCH/LOCK]

- Push momentarily to have the frequency, etc. announced by the speech synthesizer. (p. 34)
  - •The parameters to be announced can be selected in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (pgs. 131, 132)
- ➡ Push and hold for 1 sec. to toggle the dial lock function ON and OFF. (p. 37)
  - •The dial lock function electronically locks the main dial.
  - "
     appears while the dial lock function is active.

#### (P. 10)

Modular-type microphone connector—accepts the supplied microphone (HM-151).

• The optional OPC-589 can be used to connect an 8-pin microphone such as the SM-20, if desired.

• A microphone connector is also available on the rear panel. DO NOT connect 2 microphones simultaneously.

#### **(UP/DOWN (BAND) KEYS [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)]**

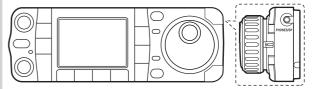
- ► Push momentarily to select a frequency band.
- → Push and hold [▲(BAND)] for 1 sec. to toggle the simple band scope display ON and OFF.
- ➡ Push and hold [▼(BAND)] for 1 sec. to toggle the multi-function meter display ON and OFF.

#### **()** MAIN DIAL TENSION LATCH

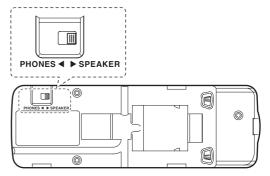
- Selects the main dial drag.
- Three positions are available. The upper setting turns on clicks as the dial is turned.

#### (p. 18)

Accepts headphones with 8–16  $\Omega$  impedance.



- •When headphones are connected, no receive audio comes from the speaker.
- When the PHONES/SPEAKER switch on the back of the front panel is set to the **[SPEAKER]** position, an external speaker can be used instead of headphones. This is convenient for mobile or outdoor operation.



Back of the front panel

#### **(**MAIN DIAL [DIAL]

Changes the displayed frequency and selects values for selected set mode items, etc.

#### RECEIVE/TRANSMIT INDICATORS [RX]/[TX]

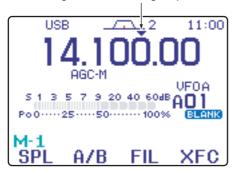
- ►[RX]: Lights green in receive mode and when squelch is open.
- ⇒[TX]: Lights red while transmitting.

#### TUNING STEP KEY [TS] (pgs. 30–32)

While in SSB/CW/RTTY modes, push momentarily to turn the programmable tuning step ON and OFF. While in AM/FM/WFM modes, push momentarily to toggle the programmable tuning step and 1 MHz quick tuning step.

• While the programmable tuning step indicator is displayed, the frequency can be changed in the programmed kHz step size.

Programmable tuning step indicator



- •0.01 (AM/FM/WFM mode only), 0.1, 1, 5, 9, 10, 12.5, 20, 25 and 100 kHz tuning steps are available.
- 1 MHz quick tuning step is only available in AM, FM and WFM modes.
- While programmable tuning steps are OFF, turns the 1 Hz step ON and OFF when pushed and held for 1 sec.
  - 1 and 10 Hz steps are only available in SSB, CW and RTTY modes.
  - •1 Hz indication appears, and the frequency can be changed in 1 Hz steps.
- While the programmable tuning step is ON, enters the tuning step selection mode when pushed and held for 1 sec.

#### **ONOISE BLANKER KEY [NB/ADJ]** (p. 78)

- Push momentarily to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF. The noise blanker reduces pulse-type noise such as that generated by automobile ignition systems. This function does not work on nonpulse noise or in WFM mode.
  - "INE" appears when the noise blanker is ON.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the noise blanker set mode.

#### **2 NOISE REDUCTION KEY [NR/LEV]** (p. 79)

- Push momentarily to turn DSP noise reduction ON and OFF.
  - "IE" appears on the display when the function is activated.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the DSP noise reduction level.

#### **@**FUNCTION DISPLAY

Shows the operating frequency, function key menus, simple band scope display, selected memory channel, etc. See p. 13 for details.

#### PRE AMP/ATTENUATOR KEY [P.AMP/ATT]

#### (p. 72)

- Push momentarily to turn the preamp ON or OFF.
   "PAMP" indicator appears when the preamp is activated.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to turn the 12 dB attenuator ON; push momentarily to turn the attenuator OFF.
  - "[ATT]" indicator appears when the attenuator is activated.

#### ✓ What is the preamp?

The preamp amplifies signals in the receiver front end (input) circuit to improve the sensitivity. Turn ON 'P.AMP' when receiving weak signals.

#### What is the attenuator?

The attenuator prevents a strong undesired signal near the desired frequency or near your location, such as from a broadcast station, from causing distortion or spurious signals.

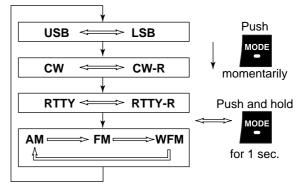
#### **2 MODE KEY [MODE]** (p. 34)

- Push momentarily to cycle through the operating modes:
  - USB/LSB ♦ CW/CW-R ♦
  - RTTY/RTTY-R AM/FM/WFM
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to toggle the following operating modes:
  - $\mathsf{USB} \iff \mathsf{LSB}$
  - $CW \leftrightarrow CW-R$

AM

- RTTY ↔ RTTY-R
  - $\rightarrow$  FM  $\rightarrow$  WFM  $\rightarrow$  AM, etc

#### **OPERATING MODE SELECTION**



### Multi-function keys

#### ♦ Menu M-1 functions



#### SPLIT OPERATION

F-1

- **SPL**  $\rightarrow$  Push momentarily to toggle the split function ON and OFF. (p. 89)
  - •" **SPE**" and transmit frequency appear when the split function is ON.
  - ➡ Push and hold for 1 sec. to turn the quick split function ON. (p. 90)
    - The offset frequency must be programmed in advance using the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (pgs. 129, 130)
    - . The offset frequency is the shift from the displayed frequency.
    - · The quick split function can be turned OFF in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 129)

#### **VFO A/B SELECTION**

- **A**→**B** → Push momentarily to exchange the transmit VFO and receive VFO contents. (p. F-2 27)
  - Push momentarily to toggle the transmission VFO and reception VFO during split operation. (p. 89)
  - Push momentarily to toggle the transmit and receive frequencies (and modes) of memory channels when the split function is turned ON.
  - → Push and hold for 1 sec. to equalize the frequency and operating mode of the two VFO's.
    - . The lower indicated frequency and operating mode are equalized to the upper (indicated) VFO frequency and operating mode.

#### FILTER SELECTION (p. 75)



- Push momentarily to select one of three IF filter settings.
  - Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the filter set mode.

#### TRANSMIT FREQUENCY CHECK (pgs. 65, 89)



- Monitors the transmit frequency when pushed and held.
- ·While pushing and holding this key, the transmit frequency can be changed with [DIAL].

#### ♦ Menu M-2 functions



#### MEMORY MENU (p. 103)



Push momentarily to indicate the memory frequency and modes.

· Memory list indication is available.

#### MEMORY WRITE (pgs. 101, 102)



Push and hold for 1 sec. to store the selected frequency and operating mode into the displayed memory channel.

#### MEMORY CLEAR (p. 106)



Push and hold for 1 sec. to clear the selected memory channel contents. • "BLANK" appears.

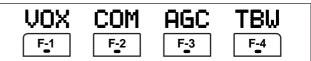
#### **VFO/MEMORY SELECTION**



- U.M →Push momentarily to toggle VFO and memory modes. (pgs. 27, 100)
  - ➡ Push and hold for 1 sec. to transfer the selected memory channel to the currently displayed VFO. (p. 107)

#### ♦ Menu M-3 functions

#### DURING SSB OPERATION:



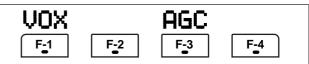
#### DURING CW OPERATION:



#### DURING RTTY OPERATION:



#### DURING AM OPERATION:



#### DURING FM/WFM OPERATIONS:

VOX	DUP	TON	9600
<b>F-1</b>	F-2	<b>F-3</b>	<b>F-4</b>

#### VOX FUNCTION (p. 83)

F-1

UOX → Push momentarily to toggle the VOX function ON and OFF.

- •"Unx" appears when the VOX function is ON.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the VOX set mode.
  - •The VOX gain, ANTI-VOX and VOX delay can be set in VOX set mode.

#### ✓ What is the VOX function?

The VOX function (voice operated transmission) activates the transmitter when you speak into the microphone and automatically returns to receive when you stop speaking.

#### SPEECH COMPRESSOR (p. 87)



- COM Push momentarily to toggle the speech compressor ON and OFF.
  - •"COM" appears when the speech compressor is ON.
  - Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the compression level set mode.
    - ·Speech compression can be adjusted in compression level set mode.

#### AGC (p. 74)



**AGC** → Push to change the time constant of the AGC circuit.

- "AGC-F," "AGC-M" or "AGC-S" appears when the fast time constant, middle time constant or slow time constant is selected, respectively.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the AGC set mode.
  - •"AGC-X" (OFF) can be selected.

#### **TBW** (p. 84)

F-4

Push momentarily to indicate the selected TBW TX filter width.

The popup indicator appears.

Push and hold for 1 sec. to toggle the TX filter width between narrow, middle or wide.

. The following filters are specified as the default. Each filter width can be set in the quick set mode. (pgs. 121, 122)

WIDE	: 100 Hz to 2900 Hz
MID	: 300 Hz to 2700 Hz
NAR	: 500 Hz to 2500 Hz

#### BREAK-IN FUNCTION (p. 85)



- Push momentarily to select semi break-in, full break-in (QSK) and break-in OFF.
  - •"BK-IN" or "F-BK" appears when selecting semi break-in or full break-in, respectively.
  - •An external switch, such as a foot switch, must be connected to the ACC socket (pin 3, pin 7 or RTTY SEND-see p. 23) if break-in is turned OFF.
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the break-in delay time set mode.

#### ✓ What is the break-in function?

Full break-in (QSK) activates the receiver between transmitted dots and dashes. This is useful when operating in nets, or during DX pile-ups and during contests, when "fast responses" are common.

#### **1/4 FUNCTION**



Push to toggle the 1/4-speed tuning function ON and OFF in CW and RTTY modes.

•When the 1/4 function is ON, "mail appears and fine tuning can be used.

#### DUPLEX FUNCTION (p. 63)



DUP Push to select the duplex transmit offset direction or turn the function OFF.

Push and hold for 1 sec. to turn the onetouch repeater function ON/OFF.

#### **FM TONE OPERATION**



TON Push momentarily to set the subaudible tone encoder for repeater use, tone squelch function, DTCS and OFF.

- •"TONE" appears when the repeater tone function is ON. (p. 63)
- "TSQL" appears when the tone squelch function is ON. (p. 60)
- •"DTCS" appears when the DTCS squelch function is ON. (p. 61)
- → Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the tone frequency or DTCS code set mode. (pgs. 60, 61)
  - Tone scan function is also available. (p. 62)
- Push and hold to transmit a 1750 Hz tone when pushing and holding [PTT]. (p. 67)

#### 9600 MODE



Push to turn the 9600 bps data transmission mode ON and OFF. (p. 116)

#### ♦ Menu S-1 functions

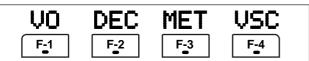
DURING SSB/AM OPERATION:



DURING CW OPERATION:

VO	KEY	MET	VSC
F-1	F-2	F-3	<b>F-4</b>

#### DURING RTTY OPERATION:



#### DURING FM/WFM OPERATIONS:



#### VO (p. 93)



Push to enter the voice recorder mode. •The voice TX/RX menu or voice root menu appears depending on the "UOICE 1st Menu" setting in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 134)

#### METER SELECTION (p. 36)



Push to select the type of metering displayed (during transmit) on the display. · Power, SWR, ALC or COMP metering can be selected.

•Only the S-meter is available during receive.

#### VOICE SQUELCH CONTROL (p. 82)



Push to togale the voice squelch control function ON and OFF.

#### **KEYER OPERATION** (p. 45)



Push to enter the memory keyer mode. . The keyer send menu or keyer root menu appears depending on the "KEYER 1st Menu" setting in the miscellaneous (others) set mode.(p. 134)

#### **RTTY DECODER FUNCTION** (p. 54)



Push to toggle the RTTY decoder display ON and OFF.

•RTTY decoder screen appears.

#### **DTMF OPERATION**

	DTM
	F-4
1	

Push to enter DTMF memory mode. (p. 67)

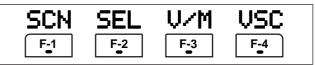
•The DTMF send menu or DTMF root menu appears depending on the "DTMF 1st Menu" setting in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 134)

#### ♦ Menu S-2 functions

DURING VFO MODE:

SCN	PRI	V/M	VSC
<b>F-1</b>	F-2	F-3	<b>F-4</b>

#### DURING MEMORY MODE:



#### SCAN (pgs. 111-113)



⇒ Push momentarily to start or stop the scan function.

#### PRIORITY WATCH (p. 113)



Push to start or stop priority watch.

#### **VFO/MEMORY SELECTION**



U.rM →Push momentarily to toggle VFO and memory modes. (pgs. 27, 100)

Push and hold for 1 sec. to transfer the frequency and operating mode in the selected memory channel to the currently displayed VFO. (p. 107)

#### VOICE SQUELCH CONTROL (p. 82)



Push to toggle the voice squelch control function ON and OFF.

#### SELECT SCAN



- ► Push momentarily to toggle the select scan settings ON and OFF for the se-
- lected memory channel. (pgs. 104, 113) Push and hold for 2 sec. to clear all select scan setting. (p. 113)
- ➡ While scanning, push to toggle the selected memory scan ON and OFF. (p. 113)

#### Menu S-3 functions

MW	MPW	MPR	
F-1	F-2	F-3	F-4

#### MEMORY WRITE (pgs. 101, 102)



Push and hold for 1 sec. to store the displayed VFO frequency and operating mode into the selected memory channel.

#### MEMO PAD WRITE (p. 109)



Push to store the displayed VFO frequency and operating mode into a memo pad.

#### MEMO PAD READ (p. 110)



Push to call up a memo pad.

#### ✓ What is the memo pad function?

The memo pad function stores the frequency and operating mode for easy recall. The memo pads are separate from the usual memory channels. The default number of memo pads is 5, however, this can be increased to 10 in the miscellaneous (others) set mode, if desired. (p. 132)

#### Menu G-1 (Scope) functions

SPN	HLD	FIX	SPD
F-1	F-2	<b>F-3</b>	<b>F-4</b>

#### SWEEP STEPS (pgs. 70, 71)



- SPN → Push momentarily to change the sweep step size. • Available steps are ±10, 25, 50, 100 and 250
  - kHz.
  - ⇒ Push and hold for 1 sec. to change the sweep steps to ±10 kHz.

#### **PEAK HOLD** (pgs. 70, 71)



- ► Push to freeze the current simple band scope display.
  - "II" indicator appears while the function is in use.
  - Push and hold for 1 sec. to clear the peak levels.

· Peak levels are displayed in the background on the simple band scope display. The peak hold function can be disabled in the scope set mode. (p. 71)

#### FIX/CENTER SELECTION (pgs. 70, 71)



- ➡ Push to toggle the simple band scope fix mode and center mode.
  - Fix mode:
  - Rotating [DIAL] leaves the marker centered. ·Center mode:
  - Rotating [DIAL] moves the edge frequencies.
- ➡ During fix mode operation, push and hold for 1 sec. to set the displayed frequency to that of the marker.

#### SWEEP SPEED



SPD → Push momentarily to change the sweep speed between Fast and Slow. (pgs. 70, 71)

> Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the scope set mode. (p. 71)

### ■ Microphone (HM-151)

#### **1 SPCH/LOCK KEY [SPCH/LOCK]**

- Push momentarily to have the frequency, etc. announced by the speech synthesizer. (p. 34)
   The parameters to be announced can be selected in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 132)
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to toggle the microphone lock function ON and OFF. (p. 37)

#### 2 PTT SWITCH [PTT] (p. 37)

Push and hold to transmit; release to receive.

#### **3 UP/DOWN SWITCHES [▲]/[▼]**

Change the operating frequency.

- •Push and hold to change the frequency repeatedly.
- •Tuning step size is 50 Hz if no TS indicator is displayed.

#### 4 TRANSMIT INDICATOR (p. 37)

Lights red while transmitting.

#### 5 KEYPAD

- Pushing a key selects the operating band.
   •[(GENE)•] selects the general coverage band.
- Pushing the same key 2 or 3 times calls up other stacked frequencies in the band. (p. 28)
- Icom's triple band stacking register memorizes 3 frequencies in each band.
- ➡ After pushing [(F-INP)ENT], enter a numeric frequency, followed by pressing [(F-INP)ENT] again. (p. 29)

•e.g. to enter 14.195 MHz, push [(F-INP)ENT] [1] [4] [•] [1] [9] [5] [(F-INP)ENT].

#### **6** FILTER SELECTION [FIL]

- Push momentarily to select one of three IF filter settings. (p. 75)
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to enter the filter set mode. (p. 76)

#### 7 MODE KEY [MODE] (p. 34)

Push momentarily to cycle through the operating modes:

USB/LSB CW/CW-R

RTTY/RTTY-R AM/FM/WFM

Push and hold for 1 sec. to toggle the following operating modes:

```
\mathsf{USB} \iff \mathsf{LSB}
```

- $CW \leftrightarrow CW-R$
- RTTY ↔ RTTY-R
- $AM \rightarrow FM \rightarrow WFM \rightarrow AM$ , etc

#### **8 POWER INDICATOR**

Lights green while transceiver power is ON.

See the illustration of the HM-151 on page i-2.

#### 9 PROGRAMMABLE FUNCTION KEYS [F-1]/[F-2]

- Program and perform a selected function.
- The functions can be assigned in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 133). The default settings for **[F-1]** and **[F-2]** are "MPW" and "MPR," respectively.

#### **Default settings**

[F-1] (MPW): Push to store the selected readout frequency and operating mode into a memo pad.

[F-2] (MPR): Push to call up a memo pad.

#### 10 MEMORY WRITE [MW] (pgs. 101, 102)

Push and hold for 1 sec. to store the displayed VFO frequency and operating mode into the displayed memory channel.

#### **11 VFO/MEMORY SELECTION [V/M]**

- Push momentarily to toggle VFO and memory modes. (pgs. 27, 100)
- Push and hold for 1 sec. to transfer the selected memory channel to the currently displayed VFO. (p. 107)

#### **12 TRANSMIT FREQUENCY CHECK [XFC]**

(pgs. 65, 89)

Monitors the transmit frequency when pushed and held.

•While pushing and holding this key, the transmit frequency can be changed with **[DIAL]**.

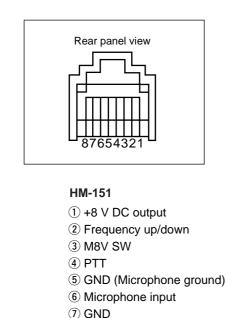
#### 13 TUNER/CALL KEY [TUNER/CALL]

→ During HF/50 MHz operation (p. 114):

- Push momentarily to toggle the automatic antenna tuner function ON and OFF.
  - An optional antenna tuner must be connected.
  - "
- Push and hold for 2 sec. to manually tune the antenna.
  - •An optional antenna tuner must be connected.
  - "
     "
     "
     "
     indicator appears when the tuner is ON.
- During 144/430 MHz operation (p. 100): Push momentarily to select the call channel (or return to the previous channel/frequency when the call channel is already selected).
  - "C1" is the 144 MHz call channel and "C2" is the 430 MHz call channel.

### ♦ Microphone connector

### MICROPHONE CONNECTOR INFORMATION



### (8) DATA IN

HM-103

3 M8V SW
 4 PTT

(7) GND

+8 V DC output
 Frequency up/down

6 Microphone input

(8) Squelch switch

(5) GND (Microphone ground)

**CAUTION: DO NOT** short pin 1 to ground as this can damage the internal 8 V regulator.

#### • When HM-151 is connected

PIN NO.	FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION	
1	+8 V DC output	Max. 10 mA	
2	Frequency up	Ground	
2	Frequency down	Ground through 470 $\Omega$	
3	HM-151 connection	Grounded to indicate HM- 151 is connected.	
8	HM-151 data	Control signal input	

#### • When HM-103 is connected

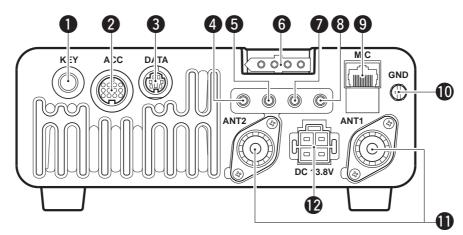
PIN NO.	FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION	
1	+8 V DC output	Max. 10 mA	
2	Frequency up	Ground	
2	Frequency down	Ground through 470 $\Omega$	
3	HM-151 connection	Open	
8	Squelch open	"LOW" level	
0	Squelch closed	"HIGH" level	

 $\triangle$  **NEVER** connect or use the supplied HM-151 (microphone) with other transceiver. This could cause damage to the transceiver. The HM-151 is designed for use with the IC-7000 **ONLY**.

10

1

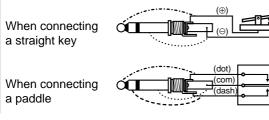
### Rear panel



#### **1** ELECTRONIC KEYER JACK [KEY] (p. 22)

Accepts a paddle to activate the internal electronic keyer.

•Selection between the internal electronic keyer and straight key operation can be made in the keyer set mode. (p. 50)



If you use an external electronic keyer, make sure the output voltage of the keyer is less than 0.4 V when keying the transmitter.

#### **2** ACCESSORY SOCKET [ACC] (p. 12)

Enables connection to external equipment such as a TNC for data communications, a linear amplifier or an automatic antenna selector/tuner, etc.

•See page at right for socket wiring information.

#### **3 DATA SOCKET [DATA]** (p. 12)

6-pin mini-DIN socket to connect a TNC (Terminal Node Controller), etc. for packet operation.See page at right for socket wiring information.

#### **4 VIDEO OUT JACK [VOUT]** (p. 18)

Outputs a video signal.

#### **G**CI-V REMOTE CONTROL JACK [REMOTE]

- (p. 142)
- Designed for use with a personal computer for remote control of the transceiver functions.
- Used for transceiver operation with another Icom CI-V transceiver or receiver.

#### **G TUNER CONTROL SOCKET [TUNER]** (p. 20)

Accepts the control cable from an optional AH-4 HF/50 MHz AUTOMATIC ANTENNA TUNER.

#### **7 RTTY JACK [RTTY]** (p. 23)

Connects an external terminal unit for RTTY (FSK) operation.

• The keying polarity, mark/shift frequencies and etc. can be selected in quick set mode (p. 123).

#### **BEXTERNAL SPEAKER JACK [EXT SP]** (p. 18) Accepts a 4–8 Ω speaker.

#### **MICROPHONE CONNECTOR [MIC]** (p. 17)

Accepts the supplied microphone (connected in parallel with the front panel's [MIC] connector). • See p. 3 for microphone notes.

• See p. 10 for microphone connector information.

#### **(D** GROUND TERMINAL [GND] (p. 15)

Connect this terminal to a station or vehicle ground to prevent electrical shocks, TVI, BCI and other problems.

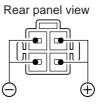
#### **(DANTENNA CONNECTOR [ANT1], [ANT2]** (p. 17)

Accepts a 50  $\Omega$  antenna with a PL-259 connector.

- •[ANT1] is for connection to an HF/50 MHz antenna.
- •[ANT2] is for connection to an 144/430 MHz antenna.
- •ANT1 is used below and ANT2 above 60 MHz.

#### DC POWER SOCKET [DC13.8V] (p. 19)

Accepts 13.8 V DC through the supplied DC power cable.



**NOTE: DO NOT** use a cigarette lighter socket as a power source when operating in a vehicle. The plug may cause voltage drops and ignition noise may be superimposed onto transmit or receive audio.

#### ♦ DATA socket

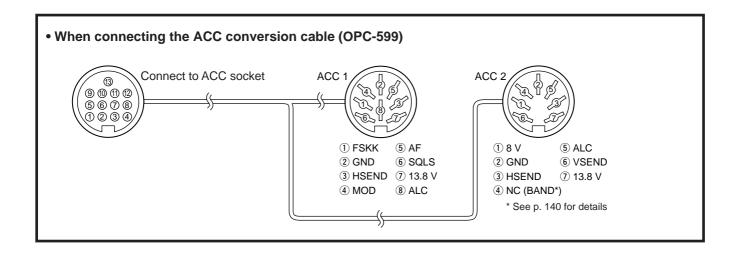
DATA	PIN No.	NAME	DESCRIPTION		
	1	DATA IN	Input terminal for data transmit. (1200 bps: AFSK/9600 bps: G3RUH, GMSK)		
	2	GND	Common ground for DATA IN, DATA OUT and AF OUT.		
	3	PTT P	PTT terminal for packet operation. Connect to ground to activate the transmitter. When grounded, microphone input (pin 6) of [MIC] connector will be disconnected.		
	4	DATA OUT	Data out terminal for 9600 bps operation only.		
	5	AF OUT	Data out terminal for 1200 bps operation only.		
Rear panel view	6	SQL	<ul> <li>Squelch out terminal. This pin is grounded when the transceiver receives a signal which opens the squelch.</li> <li>To avoid interfering transmissions, connect squelch to the TNC to inhibit transmission when squelch is open.</li> <li>Keep RF gain at a normal level, otherwise a "SQL" signal will not be output.</li> </ul>		

### ♦ ACC socket

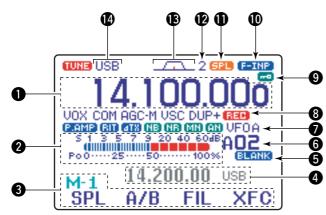
ACC	PIN No.	NAME	DESCRIPTION	SPE	CIFICATIONS
	1	8 V	Regulated 8 V output.	Output voltage Output current	: 8 V ±0.3 V : Less than 10 mA
	2	GND	Connects to ground.		
	3†	HSEND	Input/output pin. (HF/50 MHz only) Grounded when transmits.	Ground level Output current Input current (Tx)	: -0.5 V to 0.8 V : Less than 20 mA : Less than 200 mA
	4	BDT	Data line for the optional AT-180.		
$ \left(\begin{array}{c} 9 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{array}\right) $	5	NC (BAND*)	(*If the modification (p. 140) is performed, band voltage output.)	——— Output voltage	: 0 to 8.0 V
Rear panel view	6	ALC	ALC voltage input.	Control voltage Input impedance	: –4 V to 0 V : More than 10 kΩ
1 brown 8 gray 2 red 9 white 3 orange 10 black	7†	VSEND	Input/output pin. (144/430 MHz only) Grounded when transmits.	Ground level Output current Input current (Tx)	: –0.5 V to 0.8 V : Less than 20 mA : Less than 200 mA
<ul><li>④ yellow ① pink</li><li>⑤ green ① light</li></ul>	8	13.8 V	13.8 V output when power is ON.	Output current	: Max. 1 A
6 blue blue 7 purple 13 light	9	TKEY	Key line for the optional AT-180.		
Color refers to the cable strands of the supplied cable.	10	FSKK	Controls RTTY keying	"High" level "Low" level Output current	: More than 2.4 V : Less than 0.6 V : Less than 2 mA
	11	MOD	Modulator input.	Input impedance Input level	: 10 kΩ : Approx. 100 mV rms
	12	AF	AF detector output. Fixed level, regardless of <b>[AF]</b> position indefault settings.	Output impedance Output level	: 4.7 kΩ : 100–300 mV rms
	13	SQLS	Squelch output. Grounded when squelch opens.	SQL open SQL closed	: Less than 0.3 V/5 mA : More than 6.0 V/100 μA

 $^{\dagger}$  : Activating band can be changed in the miscellaneolus (other) set mode (p. 131).

1



### Function display



#### **1** FREQUENCY READOUT

Shows the operating frequency.

#### **ØMETER READOUTS**

- Shows received signal strength while receiving.
- Shows either transmit power meter (Po), SWR, ALC or compression level meter (COM) while transmitting.

#### **MULTI-FUNCTION KEY GUIDE** (p. 151)

Indicates the function of the multi-function keys. These alphanumeric readouts show a variety of information such as current functions of the "F" keys [F-1] to [F-4].

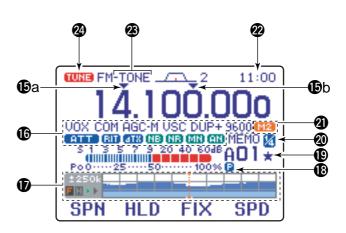
#### **4 SPLIT FREQUENCY READOUT** (pgs. 89, 90)

Shows the transmit frequency during split operation.

#### BLANK MEMORY INDICATOR (p. 101)

Appears when the displayed memory channel is not programmed (blank channel).

•This indicator appears both in VFO and memory modes.



#### **G MEMORY CHANNEL READOUT** (p. 100)

Shows the selected memory channel or scan edge channel.

- •Memory bank indicator (A to E) appears to the left of memory channel.
- This indicator appears both in VFO and memory modes.

#### VFO/MEMORY INDICATORS (pgs. 27, 100)

VFO A or B appears when VFO mode is selected; MEMO appears when memory mode is selected.

#### **3 VOICE RECODER INDICATORS** (p. 94)

REC appears when the digital voice recoder function is activated.

#### **OLOCK INDICATOR** (p. 37)

Appears when the dial lock function is activated.

#### **(DIRECT FREQUENCY ENTRY INDICATOR** (p. 29)

Appears when the transceiver is ready for direct frequency entry.

• This indicator appears when **[(F-INP)ENT]** key on the HM-151 is pushed.

#### **(I)** SPLIT INDICATOR (pgs. 89, 90)

Appears during split operation.

#### **(D) IF FILTER INDICATOR** (p. 75)

Shows the selected IF filter number.

#### (PASSBAND WIDTH INDICATOR (p. 75, 77)

Graphically displays the passband width for twin PBT operation and center frequency for IF shift operation.

#### **MODE INDICATORS** (p. 34)

Shows the selected operating mode.

· "-R" appears when CW reverse or RTTY reverse mode is selected.

#### PROGRAMMABLE/1 MHz TUNING STEP INDICATORS

- ➡ ⊕a appears when the 1 MHz quick tuning step is selected. (p. 31)
- → (B)b appears when the programmable tuning step is selected. (p. 30)

#### **(**FUNCTION INDICATORS

- vated. (p. 83)
- ➡ "F-BK" appears when full break-in operation is selected and "BK-IN" appears when semi break-in operation is selected. (p. 85)
- $\Rightarrow$  "COM" appears when the speech compressor is activated. (p. 87)
- ➡ "AGC-F," "AGC-M," "AGC-S" or "AGC-X" (OFF) appears when the fast time constant, middle time constant, slow time constant or AGC OFF is selected, respectively. (p. 74)
- $\Rightarrow$  "USC" appears when the VSC (Voice Squelch Control) function is activated in phone (SSB, AM, FM, WFM) modes. (p. 82)
- $\Rightarrow$  "DUP-" appears for negative offset and "DUP+" appears for positive offset during duplex operation. (p. 63)
- $\Rightarrow$  "9600" appears when the 9600 baud mode is activated for packet operation. (p. 116)
- $\leftarrow$  "**F.AMP**" appears when the preamp is ON, "ATT" appears when the 12 dB attenuator is ON. (p. 72)
- $\Rightarrow$  "[]]" or "[]]" appears when the RIT or  $\Delta$ TX function is activated. (pgs. 73, 86)
- ⇒ "(NB)" appears when the noise blanker is activated. (p. 78)
- vated. (p. 79)
- ← "IMI" appears when the manual notch function is activated. (p. 81)
- ← " 💷 " appears when the automatic notch function is activated. (p. 80)

#### **D**MULTI-FUNCTION SCREEN

Shows the screens for the multi-function meter, simple band scope, SWR meter, memory channel, voice recorder, memory keyer, DTMF memory encoder, RTTY decoder, IF filter selection or popup indication, etc.

#### (PRIORITY WATCH INDICATOR (p. 113)

Appears while priority scan is activated.

#### **B**SELECT MEMORY CHANNEL INDICATOR

(p. 113) Appears when select scan is enabled for the se-

lected memory channel.

#### **1/4 FUNCTION INDICATOR** (p. 32)

Appears when the <sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>-speed tuning function is activated in CW and RTTY modes.

#### **@EXTERNAL KEYPAD INDICATOR**

Shows the memory keyer or voice memory channel number. This indication appears when "External KeyPad (VOICE)" or "External KeyPad (KEYER)" in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 135) is set to ON, and which one is activated. <Example>

- •"
  "
  appears when the memory keyer "M2" is transmitted.
- "
   appears when the voice memory "T1" is transmitted.

#### **@CLOCK READOUT** (p. 117)

- Shows the current time.
- •UTC time or local time can be selected.

#### **2 TONE INDICATOR** (pgs. 60,, 61, 64)

Appears during FM tone operation.

• "TONE," "TSQL" or "DTCS" appears when the repeater tone, tone squelch, DTCS squelch are activated, respectively.

#### **2 TUNER INDICATOR** (pgs. 114, 115)

Appears when the optional automatic antenna tuner is activated.

•This indicator blinks while the tuner is tuning.

## INSTALLATION AND CONNECTIONS

### Unpacking

After unpacking, immediately report any damage to the delivering carrier or dealer. Keep the shipping cartons.

For a description and a diagram of accessory equipment included with the IC-7000, see 'Supplied accessories' on p. i-1 of this manual.

### Selecting a location

Select a location for the transceiver that allows adequate air circulation, free from extreme heat, cold, or vibrations, and away from TV sets, TV antenna elements, radios and other electromagnetic sources.

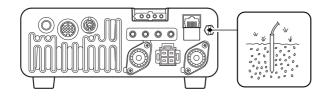
The base of the transceiver has an adjustable stand for desktop use. Set the stand to one of two angles depending on your operating conditions. (see description on right hand page)

### Grounding

To prevent electrical shock, television interference (TVI), broadcast interference (BCI) and other problems, ground the transceiver through the GROUND terminal on the rear panel.

For best results, connect a heavy gauge wire or strap to a long, buried copper rod. Make the distance between the [GND] terminal and ground as short as possible.

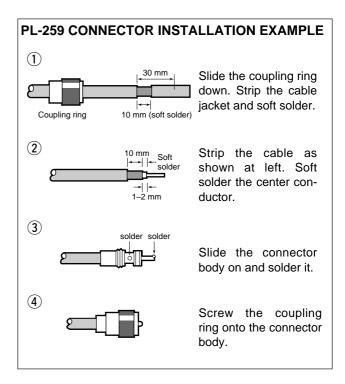
A WARNING: NEVER connect the [GND] terminal to a gas pipe or electric conduit, since the connection could cause an explosion or electric shock.



### Antenna connection

For radio communications the antenna is of critical importance for output power and sensitivity. Use wellmatched 50-ohm antennas and coaxial feedline. An SWR (standing wave radio) of 1.5:1 or lower is recommended when transmitting.

**CAUTION:** Protect your transceiver from lightning by using a lightning arrestor.

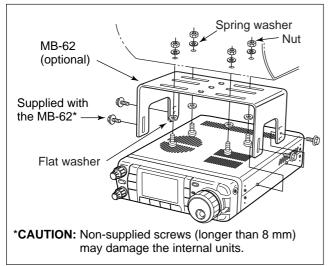


#### **ANTENNA SWR**

Each antenna is tuned for a specified frequency range and SWR increases outside that range. When the SWR is higher than approx. 2.0:1, the transceiver's power drops to protect the final transistors. In this case, an antenna tuner is used to match the transceiver and antenna. Low SWR allows full power for transmitting even when using the antenna tuner. The IC-7000 has an SWR meter to monitor the antenna SWR continuously.

### Installation

### Single body mounting

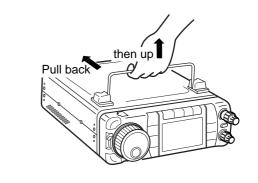


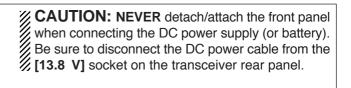
### ♦ Front panel separation

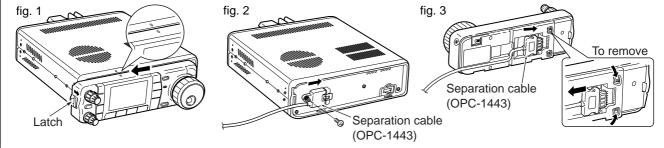
- ①While pulling the front panel latch towards you, slide the front panel to the left (fig. 1).
- ② Attach the optional OPC-1443 to the main body and tighten the supplied screw as in fig. 2.
- ③ Attach the other end of the OPC-1443 to the detached front panel as in fig. 3.

#### ♦ Stand

*To raise the stand:* With the transceiver upside down, pull the stand towards the rear panel and then upwards, as illustrated below.



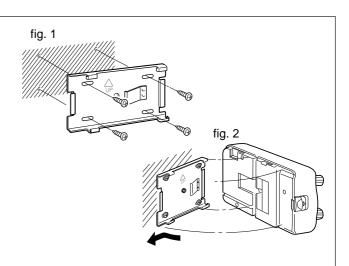




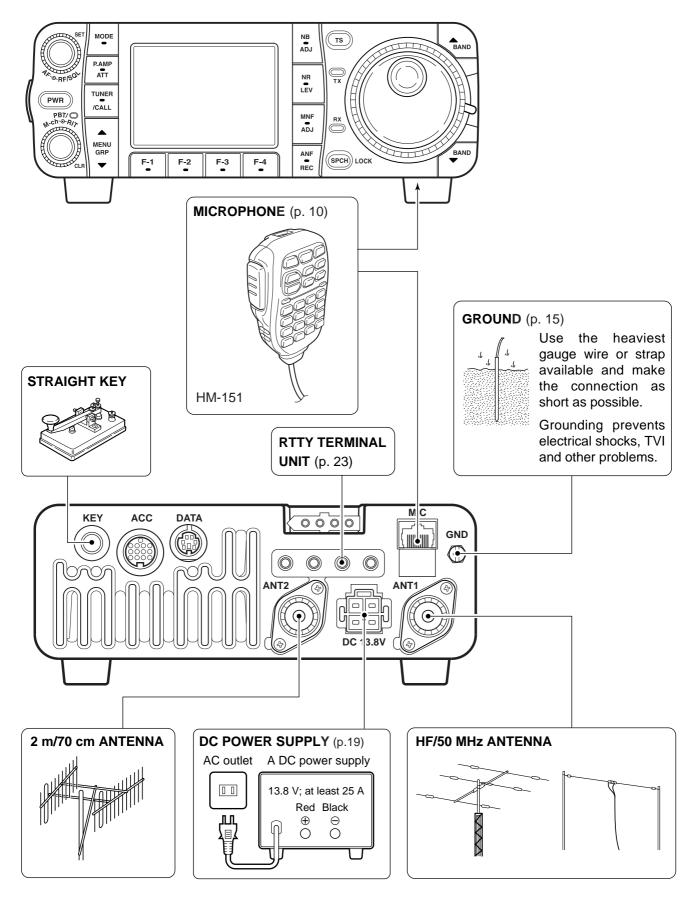
### ♦ Front panel mounting

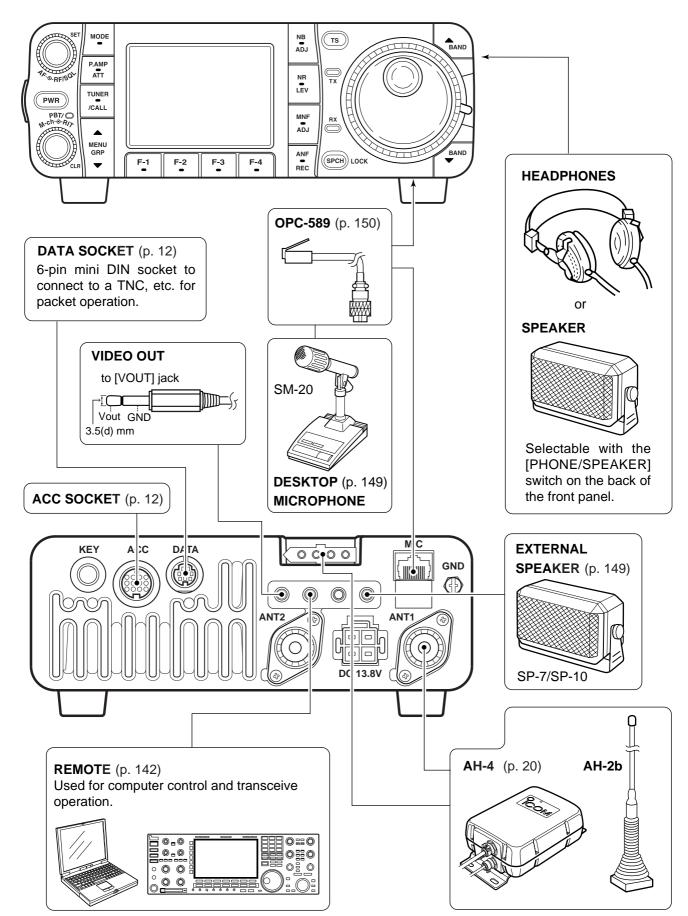
- ① Attach the MB-105 to a flat surface using the four supplied screws (fig. 1).
- ② Fix the detached front panel to the MB-105 as illustrated in fig. 2.

**BE CAREFUL** to mount the MB-105 so that the front panel attaches with the correct side up.



### ■ Required connections





### Advanced connections

### Power supply connections

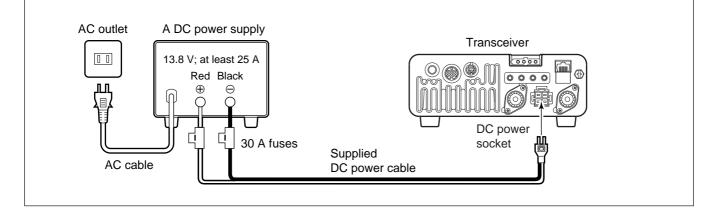
Use the DC power supply with a 25 A capacity when operating the transceiver with AC power. Refer to the diagrams below.

**CAUTION:** Before connecting the DC power cable, check the following important items. Make sure:

- The [POWER] switch is OFF.
- •Output voltage of the power source is 12–15 V.
- ·DC power cable polarity is correct.
  - Red : positive 

    terminal
  - Black : negative  $\ominus$  terminal

### ■ Connecting a DC power supply



### Battery connections

**CONNECTING A VEHICLE BATTERY** 

- **A WARNING NEVER connect** to a battery without supplying a DC fuse, otherwise a fire hazard occurs. **NEVER connect** the transceiver directly to a 24 V battery.

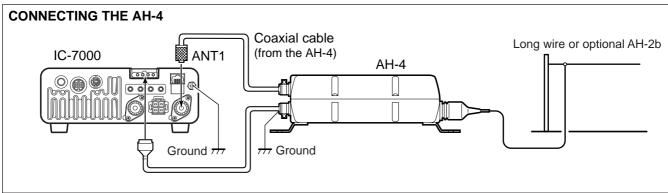
- DO NOT use a cigarette lighter socket as a power
- source when operating in a vehicle. The plug may
- cause voltage drops and ignition noise may be superimposed onto transmit or receive audio.
- •Use a rubber grommet when passing the DC power cable through a metal plate to prevent a short circuit.

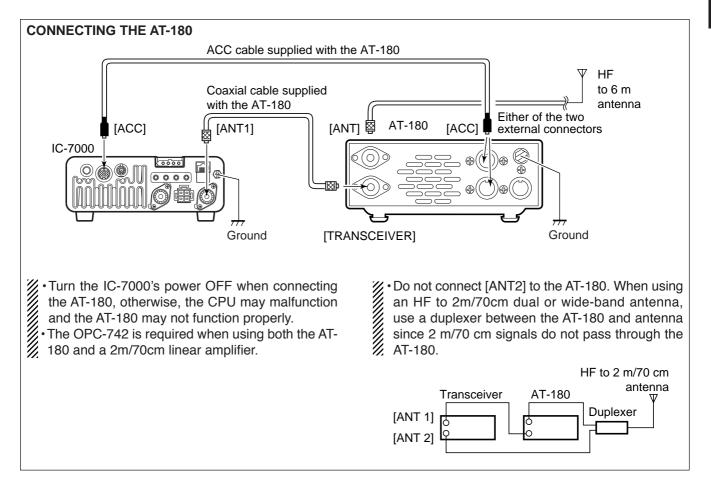
#### Note: Use terminals for 0000 the cable connections. 廲 Crimp - black red Solde 12 V batterv Supplied DC power cable

The transceiver may not receive well on some frequencies when installed in a hybrid vehicle, or any type of electric vehicle (fuel cell vehicle). This is because vehicle's electric components such as the inverter system generate a lot of electric noise.

**IMPORTANT!** Detailed installation notes for Icon ceivers to be fitted into vehicles are tact your Icom dealer or distributor. Detailed installation notes for Icom mobile transceivers to be fitted into vehicles are available. Con-



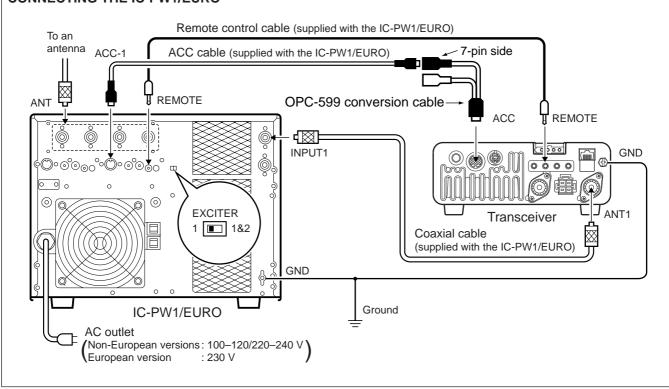




### ■ Linear amplifier connections

**CONNECTING A NON-ICOM LINEAR AMPLIFIER** 

Use the **[ANT1]** connector when connecting an HF/50 MHz linear amplifier.



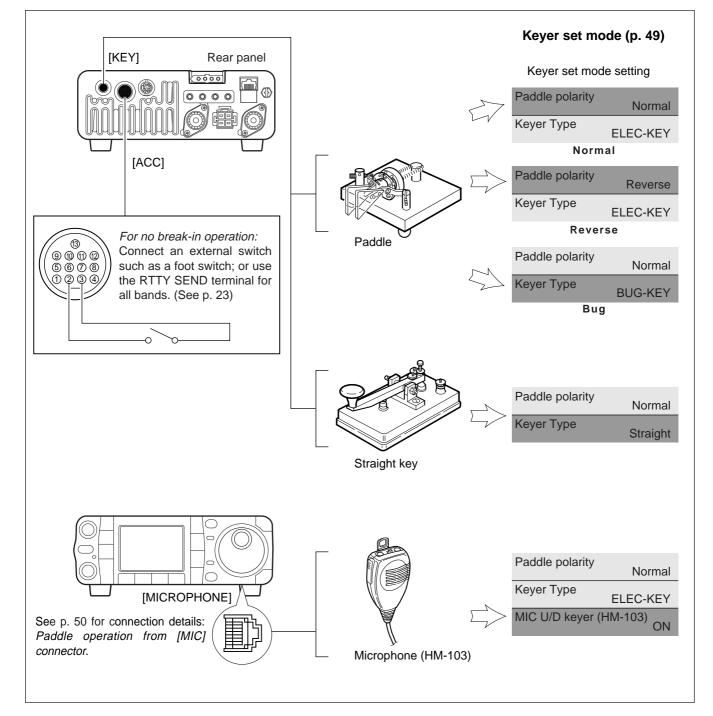
#### WARNING: Set the transceiver output power and linear amplifier ALC output level referring to the linear amplifier instruction manual. Be sure the linear amplifier keying circuit control voltage is compatible with the IC-7000, before connecting to the HSEND line (ACC cable). The ALC input level must be in the range 0 V to -4 V, and the transceiver does not accept positive voltage. Non-matched ALC and RF power settings could cause a fire or damage the linear amplifier. • The IC-7000 SEND line (ACC connector pin 3) is rate at 16 V/200 mADC. If this level is exceeded, a larger external relay must be used. 50 $\Omega$ coaxial cable To an antenna ANT1 Transceiver 0000 5 $(\bigcirc)$ GND ⊕ 0000 **RF OUT** RF IN ((Ů ALC (Blue) ALC O-KEY ⊘-**HSEND -**(Orange) ACC Ground Relay **||**8

13.8V (Gray)

ACC cable

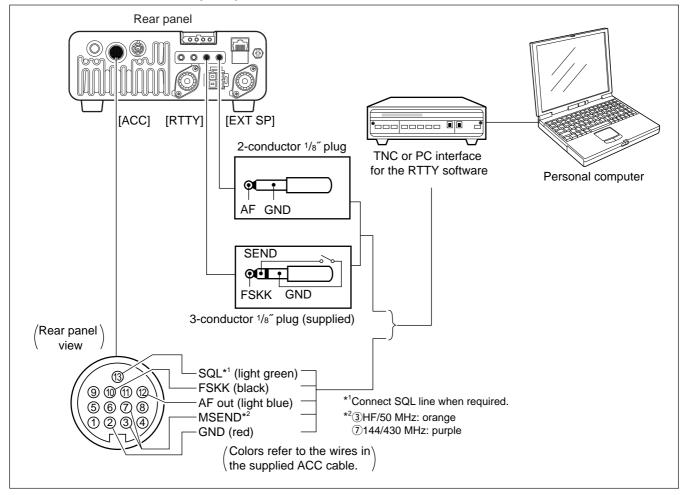
### CONNECTING THE IC-PW1/EURO

### Connections for CW

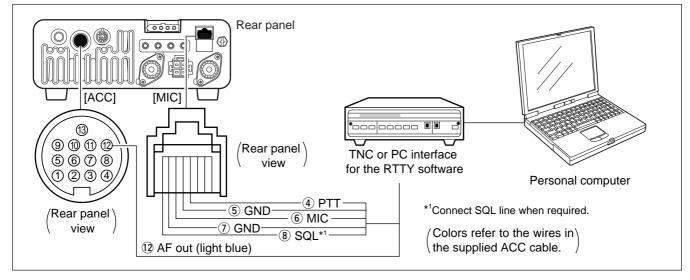


### ■ Connections for RTTY

#### ♦ Connections for RTTY (FSK)

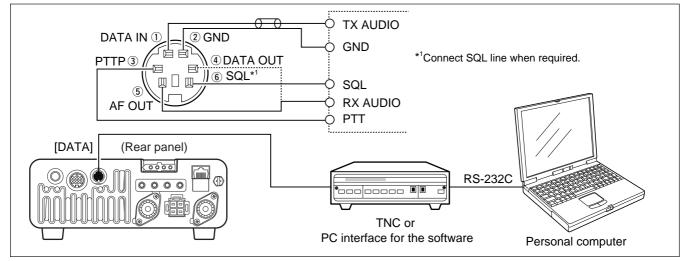


#### ♦ Connections for RTTY (AFSK)

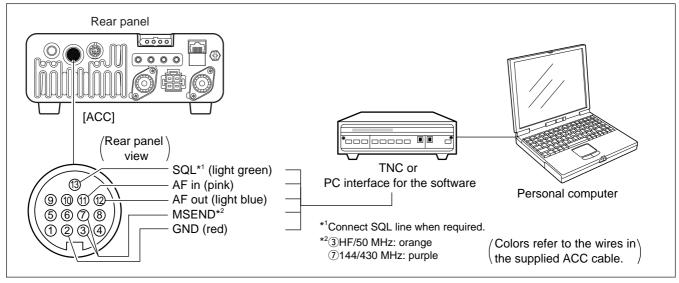


### ■ Connections for packet, SSTV or PSK31

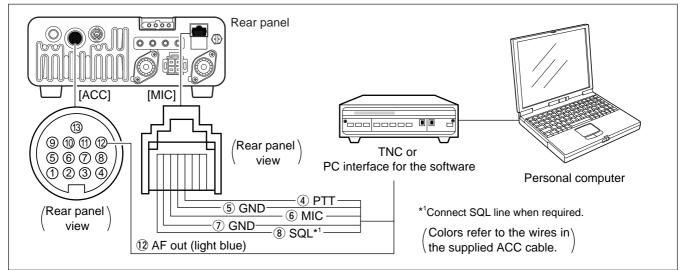
#### ♦ When connecting to [DATA] socket



#### ♦ When connecting to [ACC] socket



#### ♦ When connecting to [MIC] connector



# BASIC OPERATION

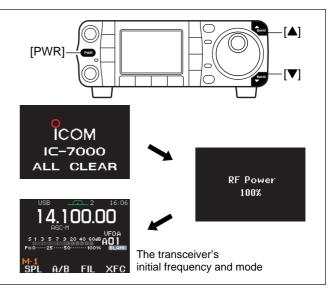
### ■When first applying power (CPU resetting)

Before first applying power, make sure all connections required for your system are complete by referring to Chapter 2. Then, reset the transceiver using the following procedure.

Resetting **CLEARS** all programmed contents in memory channels and returns default values in set mode.

① Make sure the transceiver power is OFF.

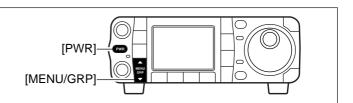
- ②While pushing and holding [▲(BAND)] and [▼(BAND)], push [PWR] to start resetting.
  - The internal CPU is reset.
  - The display changes to 'ALL CLEAR,' 'RF power 100%' and 'Initial frequency and Mode' as shown at right.



#### ♦ Menu resetting (<sup>|·|-1</sup>)

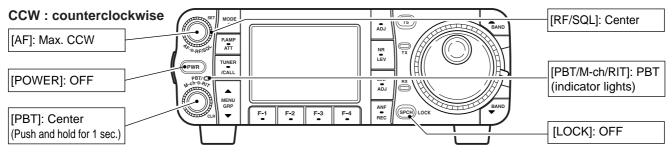
If you can't figure out how to return to menu M-1: While pushing and holding either [▲(MENU/GRP)] or [▼(MENU/GRP)], turn power ON.

•The other groups are also reset to 5-1 or 6-1(Scope) at this time.



### ■Initial settings

After resetting the transceiver, set controls and switches as shown in the diagram below.



Turn power ON, then check the display. If any of the following indicators appear, turn them OFF as follows:

- •Tuning step indicators, ▼, (SSB, CW or RTTY): Push **[TS]**.
- •MHz tuning step indicator, ▼, (FM, WFM or AM): Push **[TS]**
- •1 Hz frequency readout (SSB, CW or RTTY): Push and hold **[TS]**.
- Preamp indicator, [F.AMP]: Push [P.AMP/ATT]
- •Attenuator indicator,



- Noise blanker indicator, RE: Push [NB/ADJ]
   Noise reduction indicator, RE: Push [NR/LEV]
- Manual notch indicator,
- Push [MNF/ADJ]
- Auto notch indicator, III: Push [ANF/• REC]
- Memory mode indicator, MEMO:
- Use [F-4 V/M] in the M-2 menu (p. 27). • Split indicator, GEL:
  - Use [F-1 SPL] in the M-1 menu (p. 89).

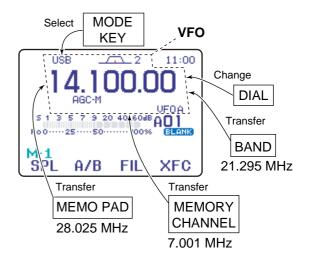
### ■VFO description

VFO is an abbreviation of Variable Frequency Oscillator, and traditionally refers to an oscillator.

The IC-7000 VFO is somewhat different. The VFO display of the IC-7000 acts like a computer's window and can show one frequency and one operating mode.

You can call up a desired frequency to the VFO with the memo pad-read key (p. 110) or the memory transfer function (p. 107). You can also change the frequency with **[DIAL]** and select an operating mode with **[MODE]** key or call up previously accessed frequency and modes with the band stacking register (p. 28).

The IC-7000 has two VFOs, specially suited for split frequency operation. The VFOs are called VFO A and VFO B. You can use the desired VFO to call up a frequency and operating mode for operation.



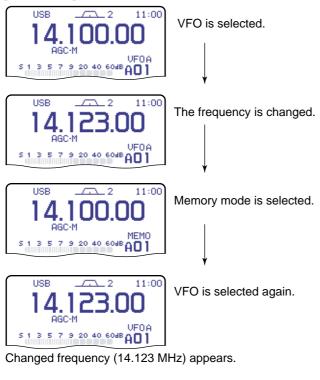
#### Differences between VFO and memory mode

#### **VFO MODE**

Each VFO shows a frequency and operating mode. If the frequency or operating mode is changed, the VFO automatically memorizes the new frequency or operating mode.

When VFO settings are changed with frequency and mode from another VFO or memory mode, the last-used frequency and operating mode for that VFO appear.

[EXAMPLE]

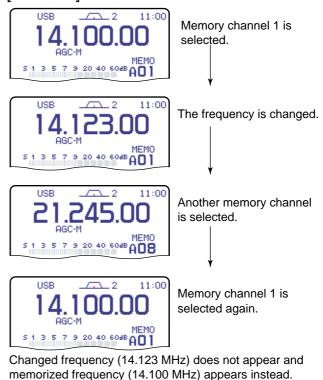


MEMORY MODE (pgs. 100–108)

Each memory channel shows a frequency and operating mode like a VFO. Even if the frequency or mode is changed, the memory channel does not memorize the new frequency or operating mode.

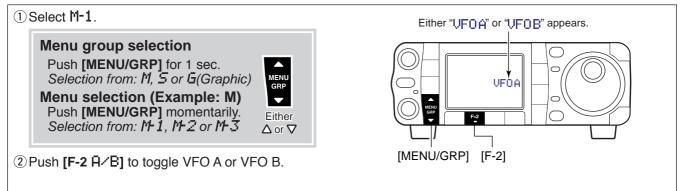
When a memory channel is changed with frequency and mode from another memory channel or VFO mode, the memorized frequency and operating mode appear.

#### [EXAMPLE]



### ■VFO operation

#### ♦ Selecting VFO A/VFO B



#### ♦ VFO equalization

#### ① Select M-1.

- ② Push and hold **[F-2 Ĥ**.✓ **B]** for 1 sec. to set the undisplayed VFO frequency and mode to those of the displayed VFO.
  - Three beeps sound when the VFO equalization is completed.

#### CONVENIENT

#### Use two VFOs as a quick memory

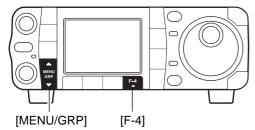
When you find a new station, but you wish to continue searching, the Two-VFO system can be used for quick memory storage.

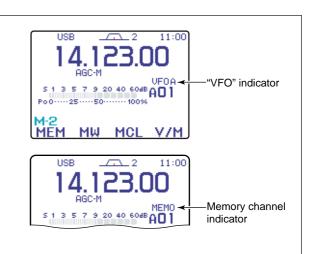
- Push [F-2 A×B] for 1 sec. to store the displayed frequency into the undisplayed VFO.
- **2** Continue searching for stations.
- 3 Push [F-2 A/B] to retrieve the stored frequency.
- ④ To continue searching for a station, push [F-2 A×B] again.

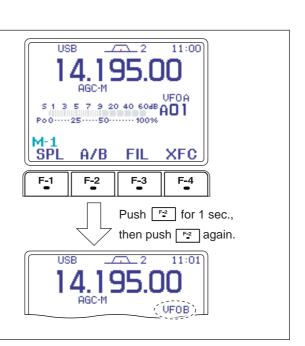
### Selecting VFO/memory mode

#### ①Select M-2.

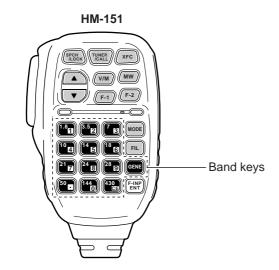
②Push [F-4 U./M] to toggle VFO and memory modes.







## Selecting an operating band



The triple band stacking register provides 3 memories in one band. 3 sets of frequency and operating mode on each band are automatically stored when used.

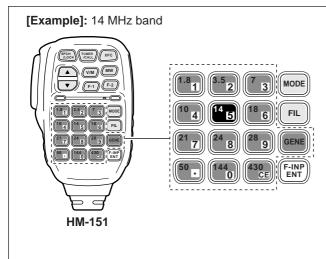
If a band key (on the HM-151) is pushed once, the last used frequency and operating mode on that band are called up. When the key is pushed again, another stored frequency and operating mode are called up.

This function is convenient when you operate 3 operating modes on one band. For example, one register is used for a CW frequency, another for an SSB frequency and the other one for an RTTY frequency.

See the table below for a list of the bands available and the default settings for each band.

BAND	REGISTER 1	REGISTER 2	REGISTER 3
1.8 MHz	1.900000 MHz CW	1.910000 MHz CW	1.915000 MHz CW
3.5 MHz	3.550000 MHz LSB	3.560000 MHz LSB	3.580000 MHz LSB
7 MHz	7.050000 MHz LSB	7.060000 MHz LSB	7.020000 MHz CW
10 MHz	10.120000 MHz CW	10.130000 MHz CW	10.140000 MHz CW
14 MHz	14.100000 MHz USB	14.200000 MHz USB	14.050000 MHz CW
18 MHz	18.100000 MHz USB	18.130000 MHz USB	18.150000 MHz USB
21 MHz	21.200000 MHz USB	21.300000 MHz USB	21.050000 MHz CW
24 MHz	24.950000 MHz USB	24.980000 MHz USB	24.900000 MHz CW
28 MHz	28.500000 MHz USB	29.500000 MHz USB	28.100000 MHz CW
50 MHz	50.100000 MHz USB	50.200000 MHz USB	51.000000 MHz FM
144 MHz	145.000000 MHz FM	145.100000 MHz FM	145.200000 MHz FM
430 MHz	433.000000 MHz FM	433.100000 MHz FM	433.200000 MHz FM
General	15.000000 MHz USB	15.100000 MHz USB	15.200000 MHz USB

### Using the band stacking registers

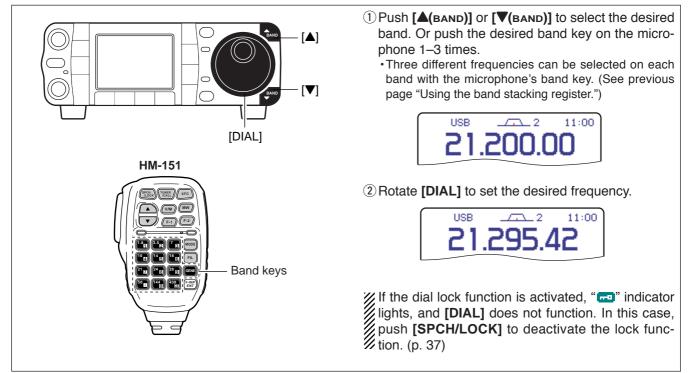


- ① Push [(14)5], then select a frequency and an operating mode.
  - Frequency and operating mode are memorized in the first band stacking register.
- ② Push [(14)5] again, then select another frequency and operating mode.
  - This frequency and operating mode are memorized in the second band stacking register.
- ③ Push [(14)5] again, then select another frequency and operating mode.
  - This frequency and operating mode are memorized in the third band stacking register.
  - When a fourth frequency and operating mode are selected on a band, the first register set in step (1), is over written.

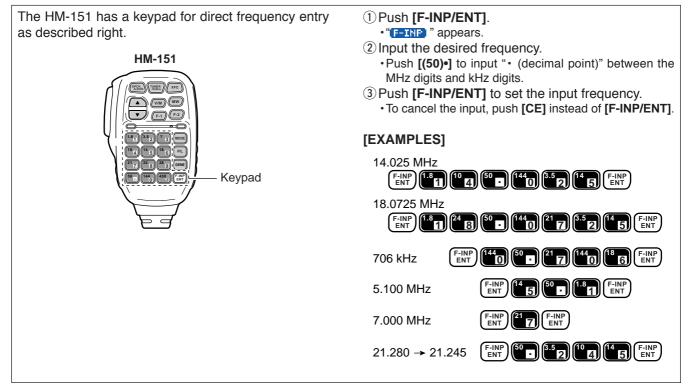
## Frequency setting

The transceiver has several tuning methods for convenient frequency tuning.

## Tuning with the main dial



## Direct frequency entry with the microphone's keypad



11:00

## Programmable tuning step

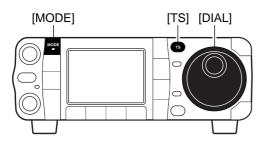
The operating frequency can be changed in steps of 1 Push **[TS]** momentarily to turn the programmable (0.01 (AM/FM/WFM only), 0.1, 1, 5, 9, 10, 12.5, 20, tuning function ON. 25 or 100 kHz selectable) for quick tuning. • "▼" appears when the programmable tuning function is ON. [TS] [DIAL] Appears Programmable tuning step indicator Ts LISB 2 -14 2 Rotate [DIAL] to change the frequency in programmed kHz steps. 3 Push **[TS]** again to turn the programmable tuning function OFF. • "▼" disappears. ④ Rotate [DIAL] for normal tuning, if desired.

## ♦ Selecting "kHz" step

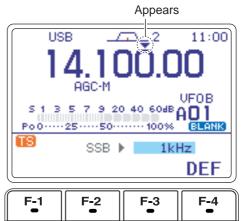
Programmable tuning steps are available to suit your operating requirements.

These tuning steps are:

- Independently selectable for each mode
- Selectable from 0.01 (AM/FM/WFM only), 0.1, 1, 5, 9, 10, 12.5, 20, 25 and 100 kHz



- (1) Push **[TS]** momentarily to turn the programmable tuning step ON.
  - "▼" appears when the programmable tuning function is ON.
- 2 Push and hold **[TS]** for 1 sec. to enter the tuning step setting display.
  - The tuning step setting for the selected mode appears.



- ③ Select the desired operating mode with [MODE]. (see p. 34)
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to select the desired tuning step from 0.01 (FM/WFM/AM only), 0.1, 1, 5, 9, 10, 12.5, 20, 25 or 100 kHz.

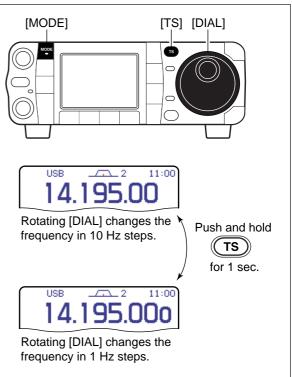
· Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to the default setting, if desired.

- (5) Repeat steps (3) and (4) to select the "kHz" tuning steps for other modes, if desired.
- 6 Push **[TS]** (or **[▼(MENU/GRP)]**) to exit the setting display.

## Selecting 1 Hz or 10 Hz step (SSB/CW/RTTY only)

When neither the quick tuning step or programmable tuning step "▼" appear, rotating **[DIAL]** changes the frequency in increments of 1 or 10 Hz. These tuning steps are only available in SSB, CW and RTTY modes.

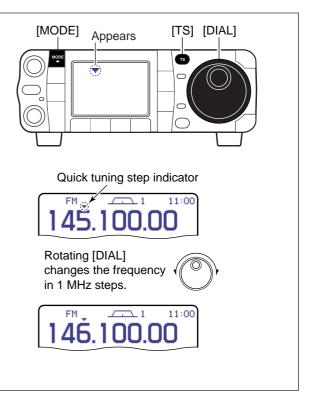
- ① Select SSB, CW or RTTY mode if necessary.
- ② Push and hold **[TS]** for 1 sec. to toggle between the 1 Hz and 10 Hz step settings.
  - •When the 1 Hz step is selected, the 1 Hz digit appears in the frequency indication; when the 10 Hz step is selected, the 1 Hz digit disappears from the frequency indication.
  - Rotating **[DIAL]** changes the frequency in 1 Hz or 10Hz tuning step.

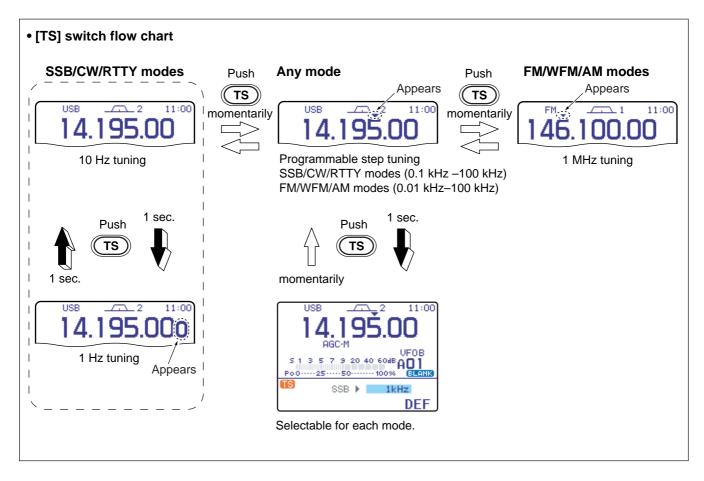


## ♦1 MHz quick tuning step (FM/WFM/AM only)

The quick tuning step function allows you to change the frequency in 1 MHz steps when rotating **[DIAL]**. This function is only available in FM, WFM and AM modes.

- ① Select FM, WFM or AM mode if necessary.
- <sup>(2)</sup>Push **[TS]** momentarily to toggle between the 1 MHz tuning step and the programmable tuning step.
  - "▼" appears above the 1 MHz indicator when the 1 MHz tuning step is selected.
  - Rotating [DIAL] changes the frequency 1 MHz.





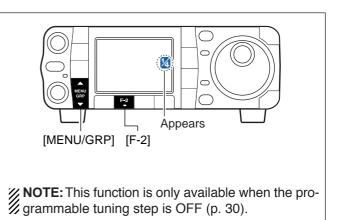
## ♦ ¼ tuning function (CW/RTTY only)

While operating in CW/RTTY, the  $\frac{1}{4}$  tuning function is available for critical tuning. Dial sensitivity is reduced to  $\frac{1}{4}$  of normal when the  $\frac{1}{4}$  function is in use.

① Select M-3.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- ②Push [F-2 1/4] to toggle the ¼ function ON and OFF.
  - •"Mail indication appears when the function is in use.



## ♦ Auto tuning step function

When rotating the tuning dial rapidly, the tuning speed accelerates automatically as selected.

- Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- ② Push [F-4 ŪTH] to enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select "MAIN DIAL Auto TS."
- ④ Rotate **[DIAL]** to select the desired tuning speed from high, low and OFF.
  - •HIGH: Approx. 5 times faster
  - ·LOW : Approx. twice faster
  - •OFF : Auto tuning step is turned OFF
- Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default setting.
- ⑤ Push [V(MENU/GRP)] twice to return to the normal operating mode.



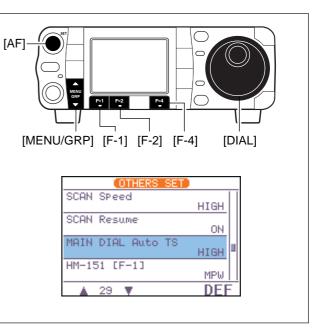
When selecting a frequency that lies outside of a band's specified frequency range, a warning beep sounds.

This function can be turned OFF in set mode, if desired.

- ①Enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode as above.
- ② Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select "BEEP (Band Edge)," then rotate [DIAL] to select the desired setting.

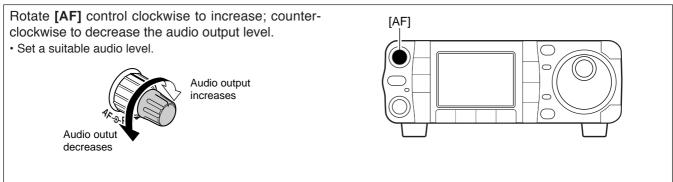
Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default setting.

③ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to return the normal operating mode.





## ■ Volume setting

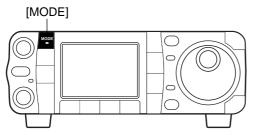


## Operating mode selection

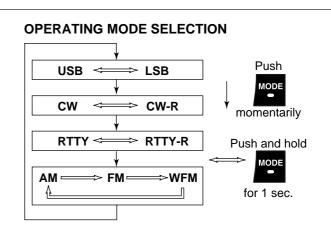
The following modes are available in the IC-7000: SSB (LSB/USB), CW, CW-R (CW reverse), RTTY, RTTY-R (RTTY reverse), AM, FM and WFM (receive only).

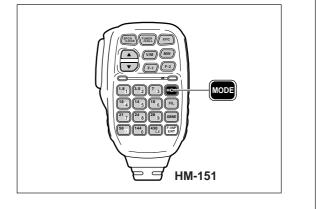
To select the desired mode of operation, push **[MODE]** one or more times, then push **[MODE]** for 1 sec., if necessary. See the diagram at right for the order of selection.

• The selected mode is indicated in the function display.



**NOTE:** If a desired mode cannot be selected, it may be hidden because of a setting in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (pgs. 134, 135).

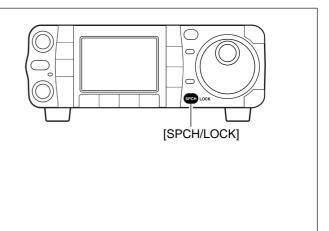




## ■ Voice synthesizer function

The IC-7000 has a voice synthesizer function. This function announces the S-meter level, operating frequency and mode (S-meter level's announcement can be deactivated—p. 132) in a clear, electronically generated voice, in English (or Japanese).

- (1) Select the desired parameters to be announced, such as Audio level, speed, language, contents, in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 131)
- ② Push [SPCH/LOCK] momentarily to announce the selected contents.
  - •Push [SPCH/LOCK] momentarily to stop the announcement.



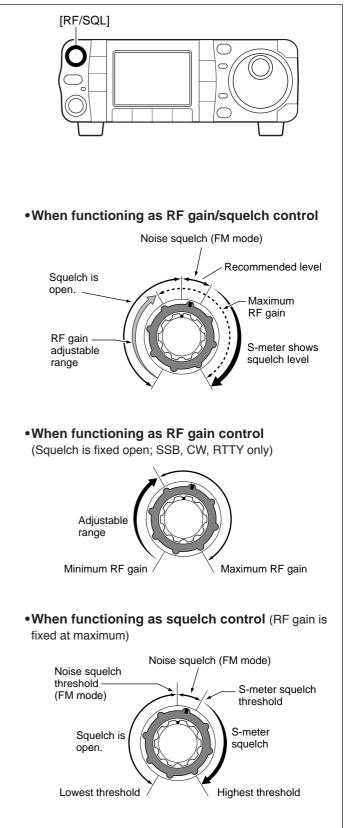
## ■ Squelch and receive (RF) sensitivity

**[RF/SQL]** adjusts the RF gain and squelch threshold level. The squelch removes noise output from the speaker (closed position) when no signal is received.

• The squelch is particularly effective for FM. It is also available for other modes.

- The 12 to 1 o'clock position is recommended for any setting of the **[RF/SQL]** control.
- The control can be set as 'Auto' (RF gain control in SSB, CW and RTTY; squelch control in AM, FM and WFM (RF gain is fixed at maximum) in the miscellaneous (others) set mode as follows (p. 129).

SETTING	OPERATION
RF+SQL (default)	Can be used in all modes. Functions as noise squelch or S-meter squelch in FM mode; S-meter squelch only in other modes.
SQL	Operates as a squelch control. •RF gain is fixed at maximum sensitivity.
AUTO	Operates as an RF gain control in SSB, CW and RTTY modes. •Squelch is fixed open. Operates as a squelch control in AM, FM and WFM modes. •RF gain is fixed at maximum sensitivity.



While rotating the RF gain control, noise may be heard. This comes from the DSP unit and does not indicate an equipment malfunction.

#### Adjusting RF gain (Receive sensitivity)

Normally, **[RF/SQL]** is set to the 11 o'clock position. Rotate **[RF/SQL]** to the 11 o'clock position for maximum sensitivity.

- Rotating counterclockwise from the maximum position reduces sensitivity.
- The S-meter indicates receive sensitivity.

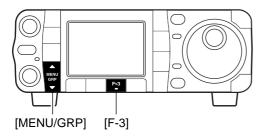
**Adjusting squelch** (Removing non-signal noise) Rotate **[RF/SQL]** clockwise when receiving no signal, until the noise just disappears.

• [RX] indicator light goes out.

• Rotating **[RF/SQL]** past the threshold point invokes the Smeter squelch—this allows you to set a minimum signal level needed to open the squelch.

## Meter function

The transceiver has 4 transmit meter functions for your convenience. Select the desired meter with the **[F-3 MET]** in the **5-1** display.



① Select 5-1.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group 5.

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu 5-1.

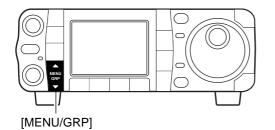
② Push [F-3 MET] one or more times to select from RF power (Po), SWR, ALC or compression level (COM).

• The display indication changes as the table at the right.

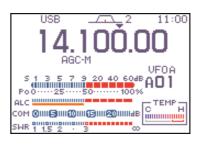
DISPLAY INDICATION	MEASUREMENT			
Ро	Indicates the relative RF output power in %.			
SWR	Indicates the SWR on the transmission line.			
ALC	Indicates the ALC level. When the meter movement shows the input signal level ex- ceeds the allowable level, the ALC limits the RF power. In such cases, reduce the MIC gain setting (see p. 38) in the quick set mode.			
СОМ	Indicates the compression level when the speech compressor is in use.			

## ♦ Multi-function meter

In addition, the transceiver can display the multi-function meter in the graphic display, which displays all transmit meters simultaneously.



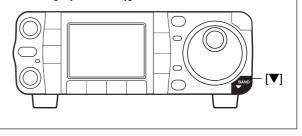
- Select G-2 (Multi-meter).
   Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice
  - to select the menu group **G**. • Push **[MENU/GRP]** momentarily one or more times to select the menu **G**-2 (Multi-meter).



The multi-function meter also displays the internal temperature meter.

#### Quick entry

 Push and hold [V(BAND)] for 1 sec. to turn the multi-function meter ON and OFF.
 Push [V(MENU/GRP)] also to turn OFF.



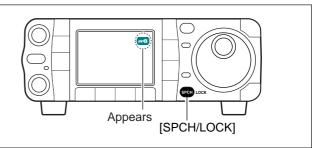
## Lock functions

The lock function can only be activated when displaying frequency, not in set mode or memory channel listing display.

## ♦ Dial lock function

The dial lock function prevents accidental change caused by **[DIAL]**.

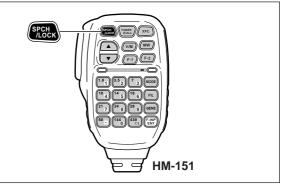
- Push and hold [SPCH/LOCK] for 1 sec. to turn the dial lock function ON and OFF.



### ♦ Microphone lock function

This function locks microphone keypads.

- Push and hold [SPCH/LOCK] (microphone) for 1 sec. to toggle the microphone lock function ON and OFF.
  - "MIC LOCK ON" and "MIC LOCK OFF," popup indicators appear, respectively
  - [PTT] and [SPCH/LOCK] can be used.
  - All keys on the transceiver can be used.



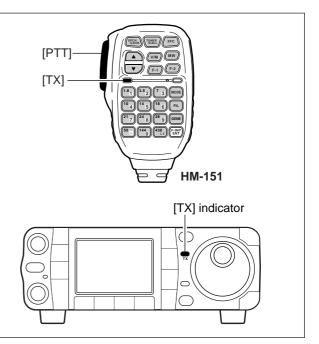
## ■ Basic transmit operation

#### ♦ Transmitting

Before transmitting, monitor your selected operating frequency to make sure transmitting won't cause interference to other stations on the same frequency. It's good Amateur practice to listen first. On the HF bands, even if nothing is heard, ask "is the frequency in use" once or twice, before you begin operating on that frequency.

Push [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
 •[TX] indicator lights red.
 Palagas [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive

2 Release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.



### ♦ Setting output power

- Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- 2 Push [F-1 QS] to enter the quick set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "RF Power."
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired output setting.
- •Output power is displayed in 1% steps (0% to 100%). ⑤ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to exit quick set mode.

#### •Available power

BAND	SSB/CW RTTY/FM	AM*
HF	2–100 W	1–40 W
50 MHz	2-100 W	1–40 W
144 MHz	2–50 W	2–20 W
430 MHz	2–35 W	2–14 W

\*Carrier power

If a linear amplifier is connected such as the IC-PW1/EURO, set the output power using the ALC meter (see below) to the ALC zone (ALC meter reading should be within this zone), otherwise the linear amplifier will not work properly.

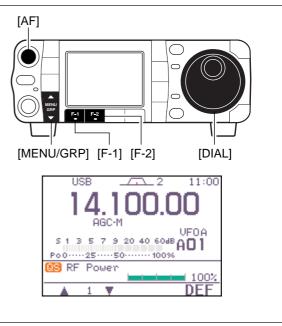
## ♦ Setting microphone gain

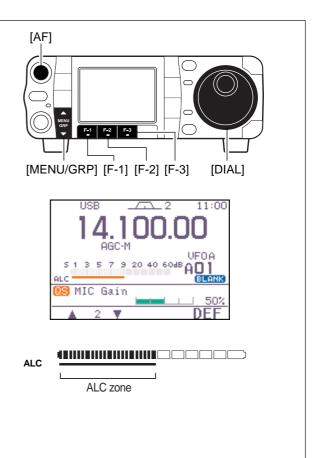
Microphone gain must be adjusted properly so that your signal is not distorted when transmitted.

- 1 Select SSB or another phone mode (AM or FM mode).
- 2 Select 5-1.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group 5.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu 5-1.
- ③ Push [F-3 MET] one or more times to select the ALC meter.
  - "ALC" appears.
- ④ Push [AF(set)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- (5) Push [F-1 Q5] to enter the quick set mode.
- 6 Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "MIC Gain."
- ⑦ Push [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
   Speak into the microphone at your normal voice level.
- (8) While speaking into the microphone, rotate [DIAL] so that the ALC meter reading does not go outside the ALC zone.
- Microphone gain is adjusted in 1% steps (0% to 100%). (9) Release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.
- ① Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to exit the quick set mode.
  - Push [V(MENU/GRP)] again to return the normal operating mode.





# 4 RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT

## Operating SSB

- ① Push [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)] to select the desired band or push a band key on the HM-151.
- ② Push [MODE] momentarily or push and hold for 1 sec. to select LSB or USB mode.
  - •Below 10 MHz LSB is automatically selected; above 10 MHz USB is automatically selected.
- ③ Rotate [DIAL] to tune in a desired signal.
   The S-meter indicates received signal strength when signal is received.
- (4) Rotate **[AF]** to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
- ⑤ Push [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.• [TX] indicator lights red.
- <sup>(6)</sup>Speak into the microphone at your normal voice level.
- Adjust 'MIC Gain' at this step, if necessary. (p. 38)
- O Release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

## **Convenient functions for receive**

#### • Preamp and attenuator (p. 72)

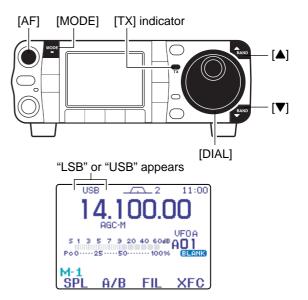
- Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the preamp ON or OFF.
  - •"F.AMP" appears when the preamp is set to ON.
- Push [P.AMP/ATT] for 1 sec. to turn the attenuator ON.
  - Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the attenuator OFF.
  - " appears when the attenuator is set to ON.
- •Twin PBT (passband tuning) (p. 77)
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (switch) momentarily once or twice to select the twin PBT ON or OFF (M-ch RIT).
  - •PBT indicator lights green when the twin PBT is selected.
- Rotate [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (controls-inner/outer).
   Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT(cLR)] to clear the settings.

#### •AGC (auto gain control) (p. 74)

➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-3 HGC] momentarily one or more times to select AGC fast, AGC middle and AGC slow.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- "AGC-F," "AGC-M" and "AGC-S" appears when the fast time constant, middle time constant and slow time constant is selected, respectively.
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-3 AGC] for 1 sec. to enter the AGC set mode.
  - Push [F-2 FAST], [F-3 MID] or [F-4 SLOW] to select the time constant, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the time constant.



#### •Noise blanker (p. 78)

- Push [NB/ADJ] to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF.
  - "TE" appears when the noise blanker is set to ON.
- Push and hold [NB/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the noise blanker set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the threshold level, or noise pulse width.

#### •DSP noise reduction (p. 79)

- ➡ Push [NR/LEV] to turn the DSP noise reduction ON and OFF.
  - "TB" appears when the DSP noise reduction is ON.
- Push and hold [NR/LEV] for 1 sec. to enter the DSP noise reduction level set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the DSP noise reduction level.

#### • Manual notch filter (pgs. 80, 81)

- Push [MNF/ADJ] to turn the manual notch filter ON and OFF.
  - "IMM" appears when the manual notch filter is set to ON.
- Push and hold [MNF/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the manual notch filter set mode.
  - Push [F-2 NF1], [F-3 NF2] to select the notch filter, push [F-4 NW] to set the filter width, rotate [DIAL] to set the notch frequency.
- Auto notch filter (p. 80)
- Push [ANF/• REC] to turn the auto notch filter ON and OFF.
  - "
     appears when the auto notch filter is set to ON.

#### •VSC (voice squelch control) (p. 82)

- ➡ While "5-1" is selected, push [F-4 USC] to turn the VSC function ON and OFF.
  - •"USC" appears when VSC function is set to ON.

#### Convenient functions for transmit

- Transmit quality monitor (p. 87)
  - ► Push [AF(SET)], then [F-4 OTH] to enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode. Select an item with [F-1 4]/[F-2 T], then rotate [DIAL] to turn the monitor function ON and OFF.
- •VOX (voice operated transmit) (p. 83)
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-1 VOX] to turn the VOX function ON and OFF.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- "UOX" appears when the VOX function is set to ON.
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-1 VOX] for 1 sec. to enter the VOX set mode. • Push [F-1 4]/[F-2 T] to select an item. · Rotate [DIAL] to set the value/conditions.

- Speech compressor (p. 87)
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-2 COM] to turn the speech compressor ON and OFF.
  - "COM" appears when the speech compressor is set to ON.
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-2 COM] for 1 sec. to enter the compression level set mode.

· Rotate [DIAL] to adjust the compression level.

- Transmit filter width (p. 84)
- ₩ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-4 TBW] momentarily to display the selected transmit filter width.
- $\Rightarrow$  While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-4 TBW] for 1 sec. to select the transmit filter width from narrow, middle and width.

. The transmit filter width window appears for showing the selected transmit filter width each time [F-4 TBW] is pushed.

### About 5 MHz band operation (USA version only)

IC-7000 Display Frequency*	FCC Channel Center Frequency*		
5.33050 MHz	5.33200 MHz		
5.34650 MHz	5.34800 MHz		
5.36650 MHz	5.36800 MHz		
5.37150 MHz	5.37300 MHz		
5.40350 MHz	5.40500 MHz		

To assist you in operating the 5 MHz band correctly within the rules specified by the FCC, transmission is impossible on any 5 MHz band frequency other than the 5 frequencies indicated in the table above.

Operation on the 5 MHz band is allowed on 5 discrete frequencies and must adhere to the following:

- USB mode
- Maximum of 50 watts ERP (Effective Radiated Power)
- 2.8 kHz bandwidth

It is the operator's responsibility to set all controls so that the transmission in this band meets the stringent conditions under which we may use these frequencies.

**NOTE:** We recommend that you store these fre-quencies, mode and filter settings into the memory  $rac{M}{M}$  channel for easy recall.

- \*The channel center freque by the FCC, show the ce passband. However, the I point frequency, so set 1. channel center frequency. \*The channel center frequencies that are specified
- by the FCC, show the center frequency of their
- passband. However, the IC-7000 displays carrier
- point frequency, so set 1.5 kHz below from FCC

## ■ Operating CW

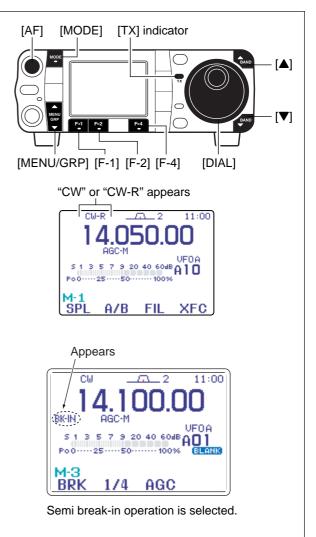
- ①Connect a paddle or straight key as on page 22.
- ②Push [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)] to select the desired band or push a band key on the HM-151.
- ③ Push [MODE] momentarily to select CW mode.
   After CW mode is selected, push and hold [MODE] for 1 sec. to toggle between CW and CW-R modes.
- ④ Rotate **[DIAL]** to tune in a desired signal with the desired tone frequency.
- (5) Rotate **[AF]** to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
- ⑥Set CW break-in operation as semi break-in, full break-in or OFF.

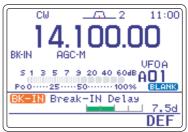
• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.

- •Push [F-1 BRK] one or more times to select the CW break-in operation.
- "BK-IN," "F-BK," and "OFF (no indication)" appears.
- BK-IN: semi break-in
- F-BK : full break-in
- OFF : no break-in (ACC socket connection is necessary as shown on page 22.)
- ⑦ Set the CW delay time when semi break-in operation is selected.
  - •Push and hold [F-1 BRK] for 1 sec. to enter the breakin delay time set mode.
- •Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired delay time.
- (8) Set CW setting in the keyer set mode (5-1).
  Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group 5.
  Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to
  - select the menu S-1.
  - •Push [F-2 KEY], [▼(MENU/GRP)], then [F-4 SET] to enter the keyer set mode. (p. 49)
- (9) Keying to transmit, use the electric keyer or paddle to send your CW signals.
  - •[TX] indicator lights red.

•The Po meter indicates transmitted CW signal strength. (1) Stop keying to return to receive.





Delay time of 7.5 dots is selected for semi break-in operation.

#### **Convenient functions for receive**

- Preamp and attenuator (p. 72)
  - Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the preamp ON or OFF.
    - "F.AMP" appears when the preamp is set to ON.
  - Push [P.AMP/ATT] for 1 sec. to turn the attenuator ON.

• Push **[P.AMP/ATT]** momentarily to turn the attenuator OFF.

• " appears when the attenuator is set to ON.

- •Twin PBT (passband tuning) (p. 77)
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (switch) momentarily once or twice to select the twin PBT ON or OFF (M-ch RIT).

• PBT indicator lights green when the twin PBT is selected.

- Rotate [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (controls-inner/outer).
   Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT(cLR)] to clear the settings.
- •AGC (auto gain control) (p. 74)
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-3 AGC] momentarily one or more times to select AGC fast, AGC middle and AGC slow.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- "AGC-F," "AGC-M" and "AGC-S" appears when the fast time constant, middle time constant and slow time constant is selected, respectively.
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-3 AGC] for 1 sec. to enter the AGC set mode.

 Push [F-2 FAST], [F-3 MID] or [F-4 SLOW] to select the time constant, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the time constant.

#### •Noise blanker (p. 78)

- Push [NB/ADJ] to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF.
  - $\boldsymbol{\cdot}$  "  $\boldsymbol{\mathbb{NB}}$  " appears when the noise blanker is set to ON.
- Push and hold [NB/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the noise blanker set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the threshold level, or noise pulse width.
- •DSP noise reduction (p. 79)
- Push [NR/LEV] to turn the DSP noise reduction ON and OFF.

• "IFF" appears when the DSP noise reduction is set to ON.

Push and hold [NR/LEV] for 1 sec. to enter the noise reduction level set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the DSP noise reduction level.

#### • Manual notch filter (pgs. 80, 81)

- Push [MNF/ADJ] to turn the manual notch filter ON and OFF.
  - "ITM" appears when the manual notch filter is set to ON.
- Push and hold [MNF/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the manual notch filter set mode.

• Push [F-2 NF1], [F-3 NF2] to select the notch filter, push [F-4 NJJ] to set the filter width, rotate [DIAL] to set the attenuated frequency.

#### •1/4 function (p. 32)

- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-2 1/4] to turn the ¼ function ON and OFF.
  - •"mail indicator appears when the function is activated.
- •CW pitch control (p. 44)
- ➤ Push [AF(set)], then [F-1 Q5] to enter the quick set mode. Select an item with [F-1 ▲]/[F-2 ▼], then rotate [DIAL] to set the desired CW pitch from 300 to 900 Hz in 5 Hz steps.

#### ♦ Convenient functions for transmit

#### •Break-in function (p. 85)

- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-1 BRK] one or more times to select the CW break-in operation.
  - Push and hold **[MENU/GRP]** for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  - Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
  - "BK-IN" or "F-BK" appears when the semi break-in or full break-in is set to ON, respectively.

#### •Memory keyer function (p. 45)

➡ While "S-1" is selected, push [F-2 KEY] to enter the keyer set memu.

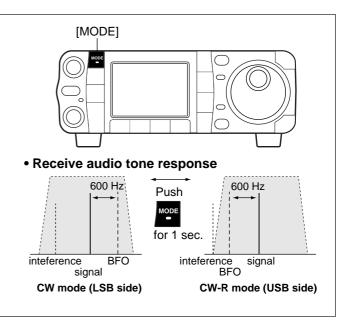
#### ♦ CW reverse mode

The CW-R (CW Reverse) mode receives CW signals on the reverse sideband like that of LSB and USB modes.

Use when interference is near the desired signal and you want to change the interference tone.

- ① Push [MODE] momentarily several times to select CW mode.
- ② Push and hold **[MODE]** for 1 sec. to select CW or CW-R mode.

• Check the interference tone.



#### **CW** side tone function

When the transceiver is in receive condition (and the break-in function is OFF - p. 85) you can listen to the tone of your CW signal without actually transmitting.

This allows you to spot your transmit signal exactly to another station's. This also convenient for CW practice.

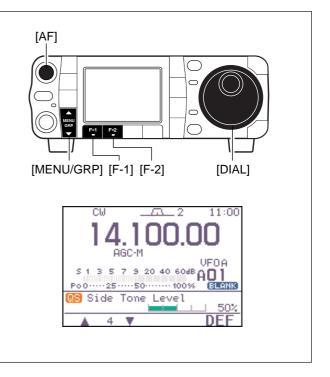
- ①When CW (CW-R) mode is selected, enter the quick set mode.
  - •Push [AF(seτ)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.

 $\boldsymbol{\cdot} \mathsf{Push} \ [\text{F-1 QS}]$  to enter the quick set mode.

②Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] several times to select "Side Tone Level," then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the side tone level.

• Side tone level is adjusted in 1% steps (0% to 100%).

Push [V(MENU/GRP)] to exit the quick set mode.
 Push [V(MENU/GRP)] again to return the normal operating mode.



#### ♦ CW pitch control

The received CW audio pitch and monitored CW audio pitch can be adjusted to suit your preferences (300 to 900 Hz) without changing the operating frequency.

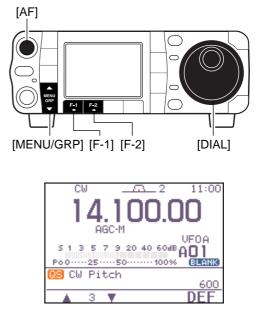
①When CW (CW-R) mode is selected, enter the quick set mode.

•Push [AF(set)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.

- $\cdot \mbox{Push}$  [F-1 Q5] to enter the quick set mode.
- ② Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] several times to select "CW Pitch," then rotate [DIAL] to set the desired pitch.

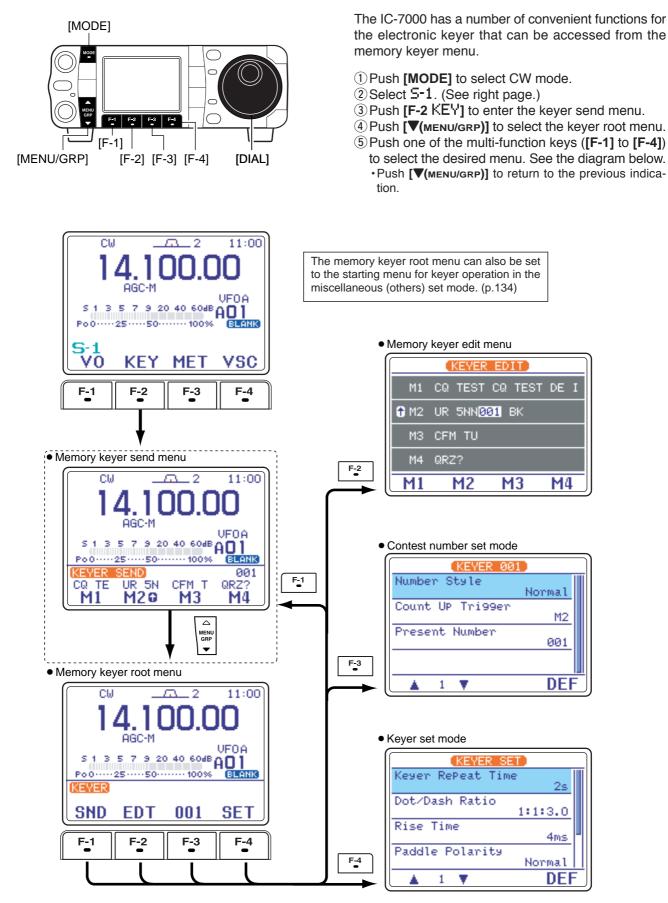
•CW pitch is adjusted in 5 Hz steps (300 to 900 Hz).

③ Push [▼(мели/grp)] to exit the quick set mode.
 • Push [▼(мели/grp)] again to return the normal operating mode.



•This shows the default setting for the CW pitch control (600 Hz).

## Electronic CW keyer



 Menu group selection

 Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec.

 Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic)

 Menu selection (Example: S)

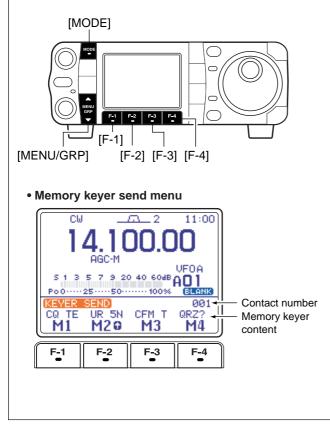
 Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily.

 Selection from: 5-1, 5-2 or 5-3



### Memory keyer send menu

Pre-set messages can be sent using the memory keyer send menu. Contents of the memory keyer are set using the edit menu.

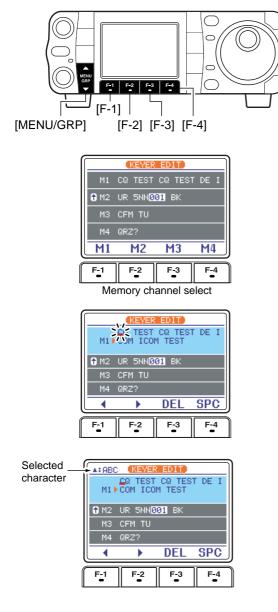


#### Transmitting

- ① Select CW mode with [MODE].
- 2 Set the break-in function ON (p. 85).
  - •When step (5) is performed with the break-in function OFF, the memory keyer contents are monitored.
- 3 Select 5-1.
- ④ Push [F-2 KEY] to enter the keyer send menu.
   If the keyer root menu appears, push [F-1 SND]. The keyer starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 134).
- (5) Push [F-1 M1] [F-4 M4] momentarily to transmit the contents one time; push and hold these keys for 1 sec. to transmit the contents repeatedly. • "M1"- "M4" are highlighted while transmitting.
  - •"(" and ")" appear while transmitting repeatedly.
  - While transmitting repeatedly, push any function key to cancel the transmission.
  - •Set the repeat interval of the memory keyer to 1–60 sec. (1 sec. steps). See p. 49 for keyer set mode.
  - •To decrement the contact number, push [▲(MENU/GRP)].
- ⑥ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the memory keyer send menu and return to normal CW mode indication.

#### Editing a keyer memory

The contents of the memory keyer memories can be set using the memory keyer edit menu. The memory keyer can memorize and re-transmit 4 CW sequences for often-used CW messages, contest number, etc. Total capacity of the memory keyer is 55 characters per memory channel.



#### Pre-programmed contents

СН	Contents
M1	CQ TEST CQ TEST DE ICOM ICOM TEST
M2	UR 5NN* BK
M3	CFM TU
M4	QRZ?

#### Programming contents

- (1) Push [MODE] to select CW mode.
- (2) Select 5-1.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group  $\mathbf{S}$ .

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu 5-1.

③ Push [F-2 KEY] then [▼(MENU/GRP)] to select the kever root menu.

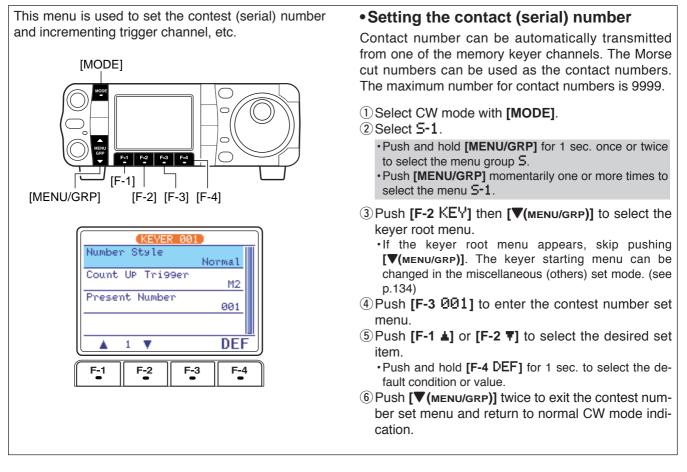
·If the keyer root menu appears, skip pushing [▼(MENU/GRP)]. The keyer starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 134)

- ④ Push [F-2 EDT] to enter the keyer edit menu.
- 5 Push [F-1 M1] [F-4 M4] to select the desired kever memory channel.
- 6 Push [A(MENU/GRP)] several times to select the desired character group ([ABC], [123] or [etc]).

Key selection	Editable characters		
ABC	A to Z (capital leters)		
123	0 to 9 (numbers)		
etc	/?^.,@*		

- NOTE:
  "^" is used to transmit a following word with no space such as AR. Put "^" before a text string such as ^AR, and the CW prosign " AR" is sent with no space.
  "\*" is used to insert the CW contest number. The contest number automatically increments by 1. This function is only available for one memory keyer channel at a time. Memory keyer channel M2 uses "\*" by default.
- ⑦ Select the desired character by rotating [DIAL] or by pushing the band key (HM-151) for the incrementing trigger memory number input.
  - Push [F-1 4] or [F-2 ] for cursor movement.
  - Push [F-3 DEL] to delete the selected character.
  - Push [F-4 SPC] to input a space.
  - "\*" is for contact numbers and can only be used on the memory channel used to increment the contact number ("G" appears next to that channel).
- 8 Repeat steps 6 and 7 until the desired contents are input.
- 9 Push [**V**(MENU/GRP)] to return to memory channel selection mode, then select the next memory channel and repeat steps (6) and (8) for character input, if desired.
- <sup>(1)</sup> Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** twice to exit the keyer edit mode.

#### Contest number set mode



1 Number Style This item sets the numbering system used for contest (serial) numbers— normal or cut numbers.	Normal : Does not use morse cut number (default)			
	190 $\rightarrow$ ANO: Sets 1 as A, 9 as N and 0 as O. 190 $\rightarrow$ ANT: Sets 1 as A, 9 as N and 0 as T.			
	90→ NO : Sets 9 as N and 0 as O. 90→ NT : Sets 9 as N and 0 as T.			
2 Count UP Tri99er				

This selects which of the four memory channels will send the contest serial number. The count up trigger increments the serial number automatically after each complete serial number is sent. •M1, M2, M3 and M4 can be set. (default: M2)

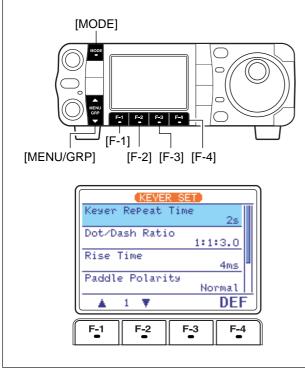
### 3 Present Number

This item shows the current number in the count up trigger channel set above.

•Rotate [DIAL] to change the number, or push [F-4 CLR] for 1sec. to reset the current number to 001.

#### ♦ Keyer set mode

This set mode is used to set the memory keyer repeat time, dash weight, paddle specifications, keyer type, etc.



### 1 Keyer RePeat Time

When sending CW using the repeat timer, this item sets the time between transmission.

#### Setting the electronic keyer

① Select CW mode with [MODE].

2 Select 5-1.

• Push and hold **[MENU/GRP]** for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group **5**.

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu 5-1.

③Push [F-2 KEY] then [▼(MENU/GRP)] to select the keyer root menu.

If the keyer root menu appears, skip pushing
 [▼(MENU/GRP)]. The keyer starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (see p.134)

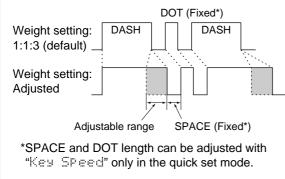
- ④ Push [F-4 SET] to enter the keyer set menu.
- ⑤ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select the desired set item.
  - Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default condition or value.
- ⑥Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the keyer set menu and return to normal CW mode indication.

- •1 to 60 sec. in 1 sec. steps can be selected.
- Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default setting. (default: 2 sec.)

#### 2 Dot/Dash Ratio

This item sets the dot/dash ratio.

#### Keying weight example: Morse code "K"



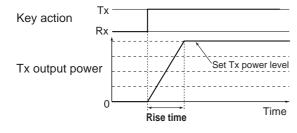
- •1:1:2.8 to 1:1:4.5 can be set.
- Check the ratio with side tone in CW mode.
- Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default ratio of 1:1:3.0.

#### Keyer set mode (continued)

#### 3 Rise Time

This item sets the envelop rise time during which the output power reaches the set transmit power.

#### About rise time



#### 4 Paddle Polarity

This item sets the paddle polarity.

- •2, 4, 6, or 8 msec. can be selected.
- Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default setting. (default: 4 sec.)

Normal and reverse polarity can be selected.
Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default setting. (default: Normal)

#### 5 Keyer TyPe

This item selects the keyer type for **[KEY]** connector on the rear panel.

- ELEC-KEY, BUG-KEY and Straight key can be selected.
- Push and hold **[F-4 DEF]** for 1 sec. to select a default setting. (default: ELEC-KEY)

## 6 MIC U/D Keyer (HM-103) (Microphone's **[UP]/[DN]** switches keyer) This item allows you to set the microphone **[UP]/[DN]** switches to be used as a paddle.

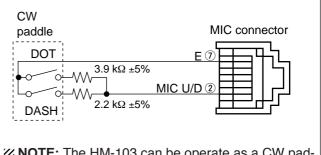
- •ON : [UP]/[DN] switches can be used for CW.
- •OFF: **[UP]/[DN]** switches cannot be used for CW. •Push and hold **[F-4 DEF]** for 1 sec. to select a default setting. (default: OFF)

**NOTE:** When "ON" is selected, the frequency and memory channel cannot be changed using the **[UP]/[DN]** switches.

#### ♦ Paddle operation from [MIC] connector

Connect a CW paddle as at right to operate an electronic keyer from the front panel **[MIC]** connector.

- This function is available from the front panel mic connector only.
- •Be sure to select "Paddle Polarity," "Keyer TyPe" "MIC U/D Keyer (HM-103)" in the keyer set mode. (see above)
- · Connect straight key to "DOT" side.
- Push both of "DOT" and "DASH to activate the squeeze operation.



**NOTE:** The HM-103 can be operate as a CW paddle from both of the front panel and rear panel mic connector. But the HM-103 is not available the squeeze operation.

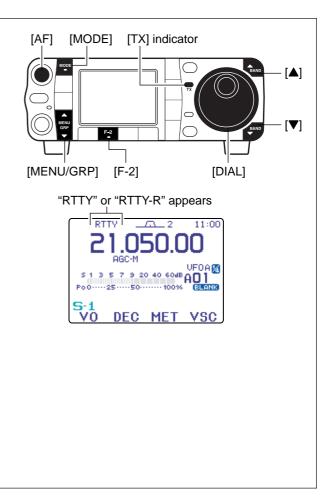
## ■ Operating RTTY (FSK)

When using your RTTY terminal or TNC, consult the manual that comes with the RTTY terminal or TNC.

- (1) Push [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)] to select the desired band or push a band key on the HM-151.
- Push [MODE] momentarily to select RTTY mode.
   After RTTY mode is selected, push and hold [MODE] for 1 sec. to toggle between RTTY and RTTY-R modes.
- ③ Display the RTTY decoder screen.
   Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group S.

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu S-1.

- •Push [F-2 DEC] to display the Baudot decoder screen. ④ Rotate [DIAL] to tune in a desired signal.
  - •Use [F-2 1/4] in the M-3 display when critical setting is required.
  - •S-meter indicates received signal strength when signal is received.
  - If the received signal cannot be demodulated, try selecting RTTY-R mode (or RTTY mode).
- (5) Transmit a SEND signal from your TNC.
- •[TX] indicator lights red.
  - •The Po meter indicates transmitted RTTY signal strength.
- ⑥Operate the connected PC or TNC (TU) to transmit RTTY (FSK) signals.



#### Convenient functions for receive

- Preamp and attenuator (p. 72)
  - Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the preamp ON or OFF.
    - "F.AMP" appears when the preamp is set to ON.
  - Push [P.AMP/ATT] for 1 sec. to turn the attenuator ON.

• Push **[P.AMP/ATT]** momentarily to turn the attenuator OFF.

• " appears when the attenuator is set to ON.

- •Twin PBT (passband tuning) (p. 77)
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (switch) momentarily once or twice to select the twin PBT ON or OFF (M-ch RIT).

• PBT indicator lights green when the twin PBT is selected.

- Rotate [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (controls-inner/outer).
   Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT(cLR)] to clear the settings.
- •AGC (auto gain control) (p. 74)
- While "M-3" is selected, push [F-3 ĤGC] momentarily one or more times to select AGC fast, AGC middle and AGC slow.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- "AGC-F," "AGC-M" and "AGC-S" appears when the fast time constant, middle time constant and slow time constant is selected, respectively.
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-3 AGC] for 1 sec. to enter the AGC set mode.

• Push [F-2 FAST], [F-3 MID] or [F-4 SLOW] to select the time constant, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the time constant.

#### • Noise blanker (p. 78)

- Push [NB/ADJ] to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF.
  - $\boldsymbol{\cdot}$  " $\boldsymbol{\Pi}\boldsymbol{\exists}$  " appears when the noise blanker is set to ON.
- Push and hold [NB/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the noise blanker set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the threshold level, or noise pulse width.

#### •DSP noise reduction (p. 79)

Push [NR/LEV] to turn the DSP noise reduction ON and OFF.

• "IFF" appears when the DSP noise reduction is set to ON.

Push and hold [NR/LEV] for 1 sec. to enter the noise reduction level set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the DSP noise reduction level.

#### • Manual notch filter (pgs. 80, 82)

- Push [MNF/ADJ] to turn the manual notch filter ON and OFF.
  - "MR" appears when the manual notch filter is set to ON.
- Push and hold [MNF/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the manual notch filter set mode.

• Push [F-2 NF1], [F-3 NF2] to select the notch filter, push [F-4 NW] to set the filter width, rotate [DIAL] to set the attenuated frequency.

#### •1/4 function (p. 32)

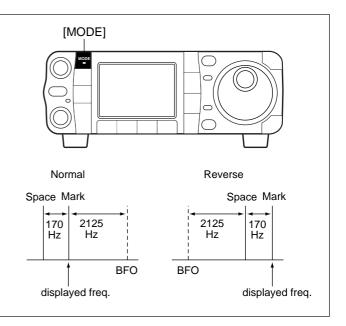
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-2 1/4] to turn the ¼ function ON and OFF.
  - •"mail indicator appears when the function is activated.

#### ♦ RTTY reverse mode

Received characters are occasionally garbled when the receive signal is reversed between MARK and SPACE. This reversal can be caused by incorrect TNC connections, settings, commands, etc.

To receive a reversed RTTY signal correctly, select RTTY-R (RTTY reverse) mode.

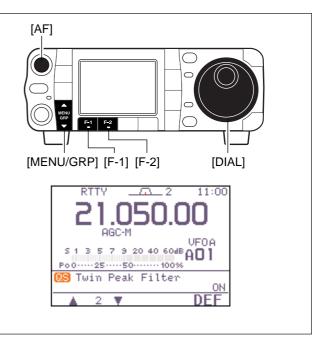
- ① Push [MODE] momentarily several times to select RTTY mode.
- ② Push and hold [MODE] for 1 sec. to select RTTY or RTTY-R mode.



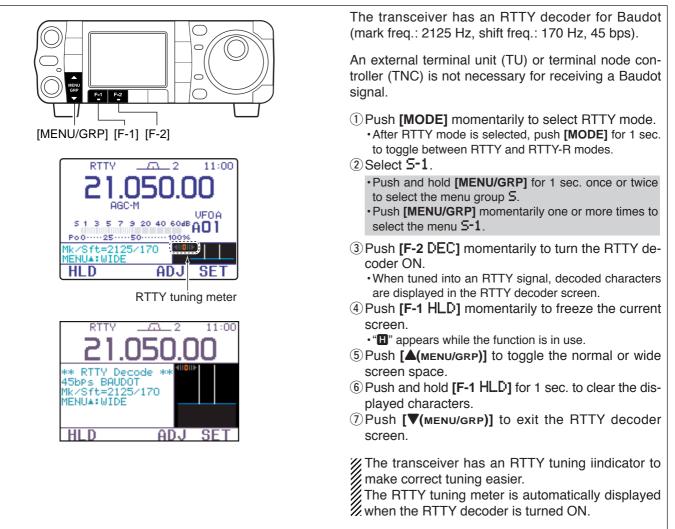
#### ♦ Twin peak filter

The twin peak filter changes the receive frequency response by boosting 2 particular frequencies (2125 and 2295 Hz) for better copying of desired RTTY signals.

- Push [MODE] momentarily to select RTTY mode.
   After RTTY mode is selected, push [MODE] for 1 sec. to toggle between RTTY and RTTY-R modes.
- ② Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- (3) Push [F-1  $\overline{Q}$ 5] to enter the quick set mode.
- ④ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select "Twin Peak Filter."
- ⑤ Rotate [DIAL] to select the twin peak filter function ON or OFF.
  - The received audio volume may become greater when the twin peak filter is turned ON.
- ⑥ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to return the normal operating mode.

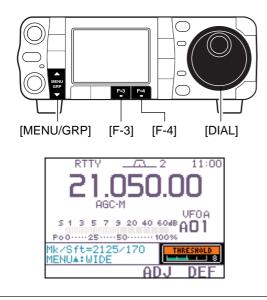


#### **♦** Function for the RTTY decoder indication



### Setting the decoder threshold level

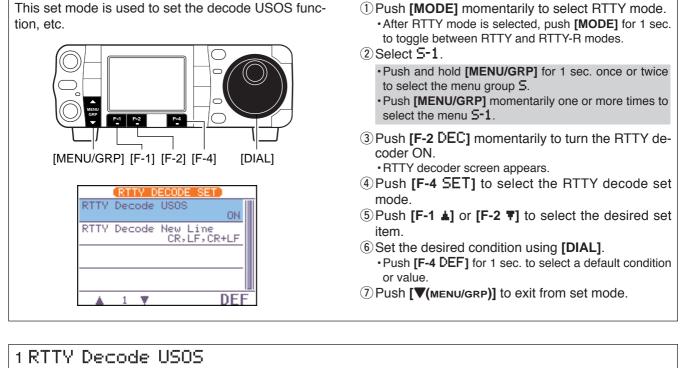
Adjust the RTTY decoder threshold level if some characters are displayed when no signal is received.



- ①Call up the RTTY decoder screen as described above.
- ② Push [F-3 ADJ] to select the threshold level setting condition.
- ③ Rotate [DIAL] to adjust the RTTY decoder threshold level.
  - •Push and hold **[F-4 DEF]** for 1 sec. to select the default condition.
- ④ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to exit the RTTY decoder screen.

The UnShift On Space (USOS) function and new line code can be set in the RTTY decode set mode. (p. 55)

#### RTTY decode set mode



This item selects the USOS (UnShift On Space) function of the internal RTTY decoder.

ON	OFF
Decode space as letter code (default)	Decode space as character code

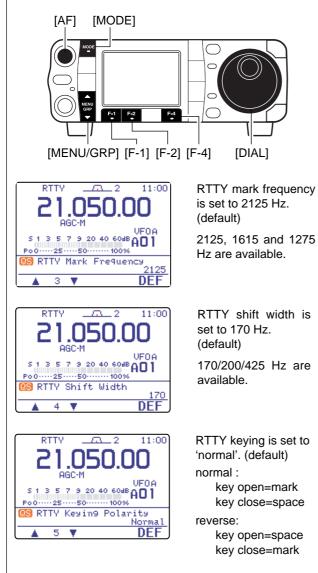
#### 2 RTTY Decode New Line Code This item selects the new line code of the internal

RTTY decoder.

CR : Carriage Return LF : Line Feed CR, LF and CR+LF (default) CR+LF CR+LF only

### ♦ Pre-setting for using RTTY terminal or TNC

When using your RTTY terminal or TNC, consult the manual that comes with the RTTY terminal or TNC.



#### Mark frequency

- Push [MODE] momentarily to select RTTY mode.
   After RTTY mode is selected, push [MODE] for 1 sec. to toggle between RTTY and RTTY-R modes.
- ② Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- ③ Push [F-1 Q5] to enter the quick set mode.
- ④ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "RTTY Mark Frequency."
- (5) Rotate [DIAL] to select the desired frequency.
   Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default frequency.

#### Shift width

- ① Enter the quick set mode as above.
- ② Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "RTTY Shift Width."
- ③ Rotate [DIAL] to select the desired shift width.
   Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default shift width.

#### **RTTY keying polarity**

- ①Enter the quick set mode as above.
- ②Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "RTTY keying Polarity."
- ③ Rotate [DIAL] to select the desired keying polarity.
   Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default polarity.

After Pre-setting is finished, push **[V(MENU/GRP)]** twice to return the normal operating mode.

## Operating AM

- ①Push [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)] to select the desired band or push a band key on the HM-151.
- ② Push [MODE] momentarily or push and hold for 1 sec. to select AM mode.
  - After FM, WFM or AM mode is selected, push **[MODE]** for 1 sec. to select from FM, WFM and AM modes.
- ③ Rotate [DIAL] to tune in a desired signal.
  - The S-meter indicates received signal strength when a signal is received.
  - The default tuning step for AM mode is 1 kHz; this can be changed using the tuning step program mode. (p. 30)
- ④ Rotate **[AF]** to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
- (5) Push [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
- •[TX] indicator lights red.
- 6 Speak into the microphone at your normal voice level.
  - Adjust 'MIC Gain' at this step, if necessary. (p. 38)
- Release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

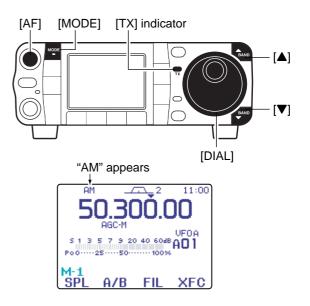
#### Convenient functions for receive

#### • Preamp and attenuator (p. 72)

- Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the preamp ON or OFF.
  - "F.AMP" appears when the preamp is set to ON.
- Push [P.AMP/ATT] for 1 sec. to turn the attenuator ON.
  - Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the attenuator OFF.
  - •"["TTT"" appears when the attenuator is set to ON.
- •Twin PBT (passband tuning) (p. 77)
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (switch) momentarily once or twice to select the twin PBT ON or OFF (M-ch RIT).
  - •PBT indicator lights green when the twin PBT is selected.
- Rotate [PBT/M-ch/RIT] (controls-inner/outer).
   Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT(cLR)] to clear the settings.

#### •Noise blanker (p. 78)

- Push [NB/ADJ] to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF.
  - •"IN appears when the noise blanker is set to ON.
- Push and hold [NB/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the noise blanker set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the threshold level, or noise pulse width.



#### •AGC (auto gain control) (p. 74)

➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-3 ÅGC] momentarily one or more times to select AGC fast, AGC middle and AGC slow.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- "AGC-F," "AGC-M" and "AGC-S" appears when the fast time constant, middle time constant and slow time constant is selected, respectively.
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-3 AGC] for 1 sec. to enter the AGC set mode.
  - Push [F-2 FAST], [F-3 MID] or [F-4 SLOW] to select the time constant, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the time constant.

#### Convenient functions for receive (continued)

- •DSP noise reduction (p. 79)
- Push [NR/LEV] to turn the DSP noise reduction ON and OFF.
  - "IFF" appears when the DSP noise reduction is set to ON.
- Push [NR/LEV] for 1 sec. to enter the noise reduction level set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the DSP noise reduction level.
- Manual notch filter (pgs. 80, 81)
- Push [MNF/ADJ] to turn the manual notch filter ON and OFF.
  - "Min" appears when the manual notch filter is set to ON.
- Push and hold [MNF/ADJ] for 1 sec. to enter the manual notch filter set mode.

• Push [F-2 NF1], [F-3 NF2] to select the notch filter, push [F-4 NW] to set the filter width, rotate [DIAL] to set the notch frequency.

#### Convenient functions for transmit

- •Transmit quality monitor (p. 87)
- Push [AF(SET)], then [F-4 ŪTH] to enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode. Select an item with [F-1 ▲]/[F-2 ▼], then rotate [DIAL] to turn the monitor function ON and OFF.
- •VOX (voice operated transmit) (p. 83)
- While "M-3" is selected, push [F-1 UOX] to turn the VOX function ON and OFF.
   Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice
  - to select the menu group M. • Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
  - "UDX" appears when the VOX function is set to ON.
- While "M-3" is selected, push and hold [F-1 ↓0X] for 1 sec. to enter the VOX set mode.
   Push [F-1 ▲]/[F-2 ▼] to select an item.
   Rotate [DIAL] to set the value/conditions.

- Auto notch filter (p. 80)
- Push [ANF/• REC] to turn the auto notch filter ON and OFF.
  - "
     appears when the auto notch filter is set to ON.
- •VSC (voice squelch control) (p. 82)
- ➡ While "S-1" is selected, push [F-4 USC] to turn the VSC function ON and OFF.

•"USC" appears when VSC function is set to ON.

## Operating FM

- ①Push [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)] to select the desired band or push a band key on the HM-151.
- ②Push [MODE] momentarily or push and hold for 1 sec. to select FM mode.
  - After FM, WFM or AM mode is selected, push **[MODE]** for 1 sec. to select from FM, WFM and AM modes.
- ③ Rotate **[DIAL]** to tune in a desired signal.
  - The S-meter indicates received signal strength when a signal is received.
  - The default tuning step for FM mode is 1 kHz; this can be changed using the tuning step program mode. (p. 30)
- ④ Rotate **[AF]** to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
- (5) Push [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
  - •[TX] indicator lights red.
- 6 Speak into the microphone at your normal voice level.
  - Adjust 'MIC Gain' at this step, if necessary. (p. 38)
- Release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

#### Convenient functions for receive

#### • Preamp and attenuator (p. 72)

- Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the preamp ON or OFF.
  - "F.AMP" appears when the preamp is set to ON.
- Push and hold [P.AMP/ATT] for 1 sec. to turn the attenuator ON.
  - Push [P.AMP/ATT] momentarily to turn the attenuator OFF.
  - •" appears when the attenuator is set to ON.

#### •Auto notch filter (p. 80)

- Push [ANF/•REC] to turn the auto notch filter ON and OFF.
  - "III" appears when the auto notch filter is set to ON.

### Convenient functions for transmit

### •VOX (voice operated transmit) (p. 83)

 ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-1 U0X] to turn the VOX function ON and OFF.
 • Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice

to select the menu group M.

- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- "VOX" appears when the VOX function is set to ON.
- ➡ While "M-3" is selected, push [F-1 UOX] for 1 sec. to enter the VOX set mode.
  - •Push [F-1 ▲]/[F-2 ▼] to select an item.
  - Rotate [DIAL] to set the value/conditions.

#### 

[MODE] [TX] indicator

[▲]

[▼]

#### •DSP noise reduction (p. 79)

[AF]

- Push [NR/LEV] to turn the DSP noise reduction ON and OFF.
  - "IND" appears when the DSP noise reduction is set to ON.
- Push and hold [NR/LEV] for 1 sec. to enter the noise reduction level set mode, then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the DSP noise reduction level.

#### •VSC (voice squelch control) (p. 82)

- ➡ While "S-1" is selected, push [F-4 USC] to turn the VSC function ON and OFF.
  - "USC" appears when VSC function is set to ON.

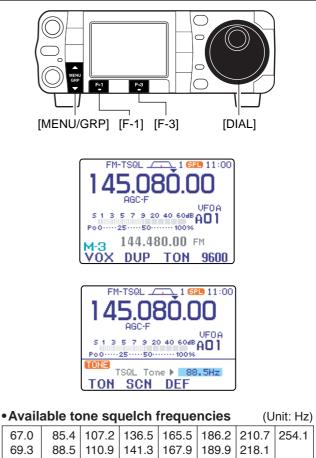
#### •Transmit quality monitor (p. 87)

➤ Push [AF(set)], then [F-4 ŪTH] to enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode. Select an item with [F-1 ▲]/[F-2 ▼], then rotate [DIAL] to turn the monitor function ON and OFF.

#### ♦ Tone squelch operation

Tone squelch operation is a method of communications using selective calling. Only received signals having a matching tone will open the squelch. Before communicating using tone squelch, all members of your party must agree on the tone squelch frequency.

- ①Push [MODE] one or more times to select FM mode.
- 2 Select M-3.
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  - Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- ③ Push [F-3 TŪN] momentarily several times to turn the tone squelch function ON. "TSQL" appears.
- ④ Push and hold [F-3 TŪN] for 1 sec. to enter the FM tone set mode.
  - The selected tone frequency for TSQL appears.
  - •Other tone functions can be set by pushing [F-1 TŪN].
- (5) Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired subaudible tone frequency.
  - ·See table at right for available tone frequencies.
  - Push and hold [F-3 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default frequency.
  - Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to exit the FM tone set mode.
- 6 Communicate in the usual manner.
- Push and hold **[PTT]** to transmit; release **[PTT]** to receive.

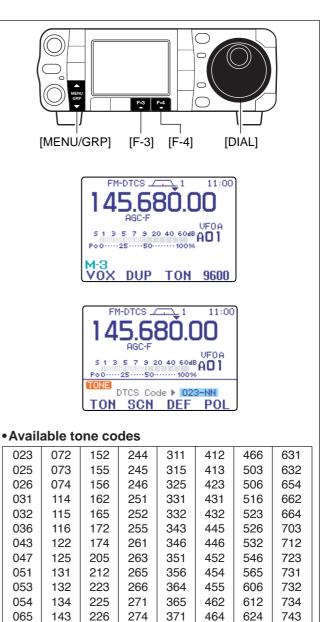


85.4	107.2	136.5	165.5	186.2	210.7	254.1
88.5	110.9	141.3	167.9	189.9	218.1	
91.5	114.8	146.2	171.3	192.8	225.7	
94.8	118.8	151.4	173.8	196.6	229.1	
97.4	123.0	156.7	177.3	199.5	233.6	
100.0	127.3	159.8	179.9	203.5	241.8	
103.5	131.8	162.2	183.5	206.5	250.3	
	88.5 91.5 94.8 97.4 100.0	88.5110.991.5114.894.8118.897.4123.0100.0127.3	88.5110.9141.391.5114.8146.294.8118.8151.497.4123.0156.7100.0127.3159.8	88.5110.9141.3167.991.5114.8146.2171.394.8118.8151.4173.897.4123.0156.7177.3100.0127.3159.8179.9	88.5110.9141.3167.9189.991.5114.8146.2171.3192.894.8118.8151.4173.8196.697.4123.0156.7177.3199.5100.0127.3159.8179.9203.5	85.4107.2136.5165.5186.2210.788.5110.9141.3167.9189.9218.191.5114.8146.2171.3192.8225.794.8118.8151.4173.8196.6229.197.4123.0156.7177.3199.5233.6100.0127.3159.8179.9203.5241.8103.5131.8162.2183.5206.5250.3

4

#### ♦ DTCS operation

DTCS function is an another method of communications using selective calling. Only received signals having a matching 3-digit code will open the squelch. ①Push [MODE] one or more times to select FM mode. (2) Select M-3. · Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M. · Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3. ③ Push [F-3 TŪN] once or twice to turn the DTCS function ON. "DTCS" appears. (4) Push and hold [F-3 TUN] for 1 sec. to enter the FM tone set mode. ·The selected DTCS code appears. •Other tone functions can be set by pushing [F-1 TON]. 5 Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired DTCS code and push [F-4 POL] several times to select the desired code polarity. NH : Normal polarity is used for both transmit and receive. NR : Normal polarity is used for transmit, reversed polarity is used for receive. RN : Reversed polarity is used for transmit, normal polarity is used for receive. **RR** : Reversed polarity is used for both transmit and receive. • Push and hold [F-3 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default code and polarity. • Push [V(MENU/GRP)] to exit the FM tone set mode. 6 Communicate in the usual manner. · Push and hold [PTT] to transmit; release [PTT] to receive.



145

243

071

306

411

465

627

754

During repeater operation.

#### ♦ Tone scan operation

By monitoring a signal that is being transmitted on a

During tone squelch operation.

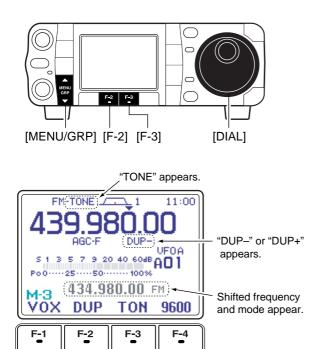
repeater input frequency, you can determine the tone frequency necessary to access a repeater. ①During tone squelch, DTCS squelch or repeater  $\subset$ operation ("TSQL," "DTCS" or "TONE" is displayed), select M-3. • Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice F-2 F-3 to select the menu group M. • Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to [MENU/GRP] [F-2] [F-3] select the menu M-3. 2 Push and hold [F-3 TON] for 1 sec. to enter the FM tone set mode. FM-TSQL \_\_\_\_\_1 11:00 45.681 ③ Push [F-2 SCN] to toggle the tone scan operation ON and OFF. AGC-F UFOA ·When a matched tone or code is detected, tone scan 5 1 3 5 7 9 20 40 60dB A O I Po0.....25.....50.......100% automatically stops, the matched tone or code is displayed and the tone or code setting is automatically ad-M-3 VOX DUP TON 9600 justed accordingly. ④ Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** to exit the FM tone set mode. 11:00 FM-TONE \_\_\_\_1 11:00 FM-TSQL \_\_\_\_1 11:00 FM-DTCS \_\_\_\_1 DUF VFOA UFOA 3 5 7 9 20 40 60dB AO1 5 1 3 5 7 9 20 40 60dB AO1 3 5 7 9 20 40 60dB AO1 ··25····50····· 100% - 25 - - - - 50 - - - --- 100% PoÖ PoÖ PoÖ TONE TSQL Tone 🕨 88.5Hz DTCS Code > 023-NN RPtr Tone > 88.5Hz TON SCN DEF TON SCN DEF POL TON SCN DEF

During DTCS squelch operation.

## Repeater operation

A repeater amplifies received signals and retransmits them at a different frequency. When using a repeater, the transmit frequency is shifted from the receive frequency by an offset frequency. A repeater can be accessed using split frequency operation with the shift frequency set to the repeater's offset frequency.

For accessing a repeater which requires a repeater tone, set the repeater tone frequency in the FM tone set mode as described on the next page.



- To set the transceiver for repeater operation, follow the steps (1) to (3) to select VFO mode, desired band, FM mode.
- ① Push [F-4 U/M] to select VFO mode.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-2.

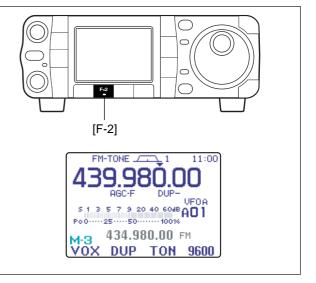
- ②Push [▲(BAND)]/[▼(BAND)] to select the desired band or push a band key on the HM-151.
- ③ Push [MODE] momentarily or push and hold for 1 sec. to select FM mode.
  - After FM, WFM or AM mode is selected, push [MODE] for 1 sec. to select from FM, WFM and AM modes.
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to set the receive frequency (repeater output frequency).
- 5 Select M-3.
- ⑥ Push [F-2 DUP] once or twice to set the offset direction.
  - •"DUP-" or "DUP+" appears.
  - •The default repeater offsets are the standard values of 0.1000 MHz for HF, 0.500 MHz for 50MHz, 0.600 MHz for 144 MHz, and 5.000 MHz for 430 MHz. The offset can be adjusted in set mode. (pgs. 129, 130)
  - The transmit frequency can be monitored while pushing and holding [F-4 XFC] in the M-1 display.
- ⑦ Push [F-3 TŪN] to turn the repeater tone ON. • "TŪNE" appears.
  - The tone frequency can be set in the FM tone set mode as described on the next page.
- (8) Communicate in the usual manner.
  - Push and hold [PTT] to transmit; release [PTT] to receive.

## One-touch repeater function

This function allows you to set repeater operation by pushing one key.

- ➤ To set the transceiver for repeater operation using the one-touch repeater function, follow the steps ① to ⑤ as above, then push and hold [F-2 DUP] for 1 sec.
  - Push and hold [F-2 DUP] for 1 sec. again to exit the repeater operating condition.

Set the offset shift direction and frequency in advance (p. 130) as well as the tone frequency (see p. 64).



## ♦ Repeater tone frequency

Some repeaters require subaudible tones to be accessed. Subaudible tones are superimposed over your normal signal and must be set in advance. The transceiver has 50 tones from 67.0 Hz to 254.1 Hz.

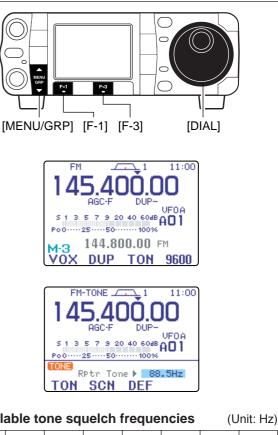
Each memory channel can store a different subaudible tone frequency.

#### 1) Select M-3.

- Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
- · Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- 2 Push [F-3 TŪN] once or twice to turn the tone encoder ON.
- · "TONE" appears.
- ③ Push and hold [F-3 TŪN] for 1 sec. to enter the FM tone set mode.
  - The selected tone frequency appears.
  - •Other tone functions can be set by pushing [F-1 TUN].
- 4 Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired subaudible tone frequency.
  - · See table at right for available tone frequencies.
- (5) Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to exit the FM tone set mode.

#### CONVENIENT

Store repeater tone frequencies and ON/OFF settings in memory channels for easy recall. The transceiver's repeater tone frequency is set to 88.5 Hz by default. This can be changed if desired.



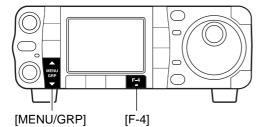
#### Available tone squelch frequencies

85.4 107.2 136.5 165.5 186.2 210.7 254.1 67.0 69.3 88.5 110.9 141.3 167.9 189.9 218.1 71.9 114.8 146.2 171.3 192.8 225.7 91.5 94.8 118.8 151.4 173.8 196.6 229.1 74.4 77.0 123.0 156.7 177.3 199.5 233.6 97.4 79.7 100.0 127.3 159.8 179.9 203.5 241.8 131.8 162.2 183.5 206.5 250.3 82.5 103.5

## ♦ Transmit frequency monitor check

You may be able to receive the other party's transmit signal directly (called 'listening on the repeater input') without having to go through a repeater.

Transmit frequency monitor check (XFC) allows you to check this.



#### ①Select M-1.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-1.

While receiving, push and hold [F-4 XFC] to see if you can receive the other party's transmit signal directly.

• While holding [F-4 XFC], the offset direction and frequency are displayed above the multi-function key indicator.

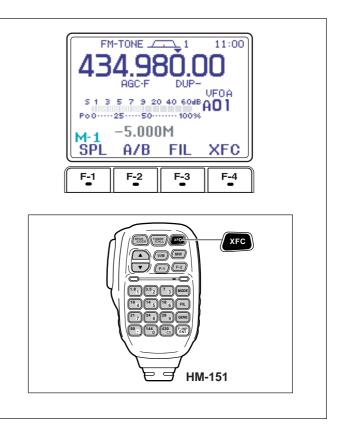
## ♦ Auto repeater function (USA version only)

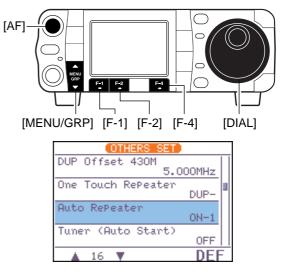
This function automatically activates the repeater settings (DUP- or DUP+ and/or tone encoder ON/OFF) when the operating frequency falls within the general repeater output frequency range and deactivates them when outside of the range.

Set the auto repeater function ON-1 (auto duplex setting) or ON-2 (auto duplex setting and activating tone encoder) in the miscellaneous (others) set mode in advance (p. 130). When ON-1 or ON-2 are turned on, repeater settings are automatically activated according to the table below right.

ON-1 sets the duplex setting and ON-2 sets the duplex setting and tone encoder automatically.

- Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- ② Push [F-4 ŪTH] to enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode.
- ③Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "Auto Re-Peater."
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to select the desired auto repeater condition from ON-1, ON-2 and OFF.
- •Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default setting.
  ⑤ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to return to the normal operating mode.

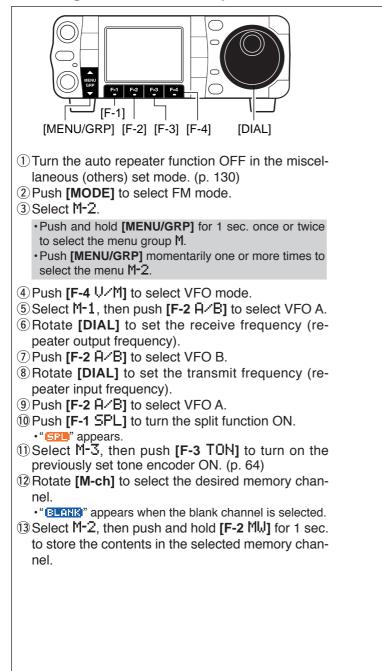


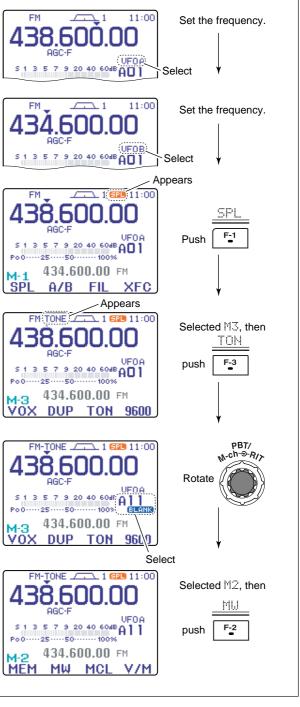


#### • Frequency range and offset direction (for USA)

51.620–51.999999 MHz 52.500–52.999999 MHz 53.500–53.999999 MHz
53.500–53.999999 MHz
145.200–145.499999 MHz
146.610–146.9999999 MHz minus duplex
147.000–147.399999 MHz plus duplex
442.000–444.999999 MHz plus duplex
447.000–449.9999999 MHz minus duplex

## Storing a non standard repeater





4

# ■1750 Hz tone burst

A 1750 Hz tone is required to access most European repeaters.

➡ While pushing and holding [PTT], push [F-3 TŪN] in the M-1 display during repeater operation. (pgs. 63, 66)

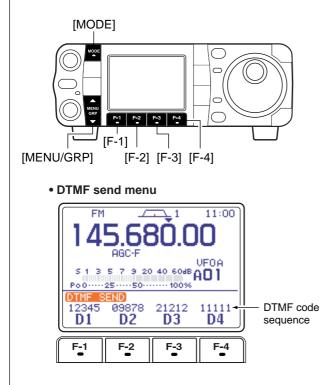


# DTMF memory encoder

DTMF tones are used for autopatching, controlling other equipment, etc. The transceiver has 4 DTMF memory channels (D1–D4) for storage of often-used DTMF codes sequence of up to 24 digits.

## ♦ DTMF send menu

To transmit a DTMF code using a DTMF send menu, program the desired code in advance as described on next page.



## •Transmitting

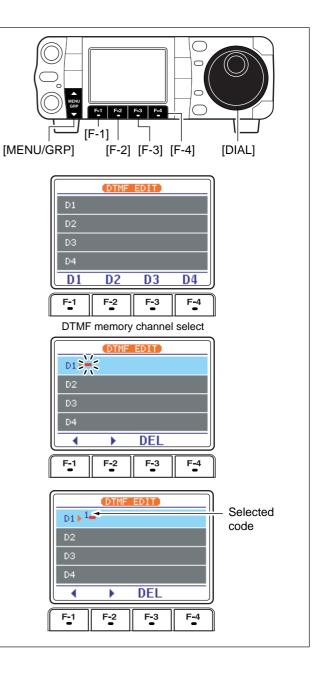
- 1 Select FM mode with [MODE].
- 2 Select 5-1.
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group 5.

11:00

- •Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu 5-1.
- ③ Push [F-2 DTM] to enter the DTMF send menu.
   If the DTMF root menu appears, push [F-1 SND]. The DTMF starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (see p. 134).
- ④ Push [F-1 D1] [F-4 D4] to transmit the DTMF code.
  - "D1"-- "D4" are highlighted while transmitting.
  - Set the DTMF speed from 100–500 msec. (100 msec. steps). See next page for DTMF set mode.
- ⑤ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit DTMF send menu and return to the normal FM mode display.

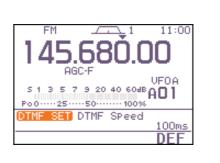
# Programming a DTMF code

- 1 Push [MODE] to select FM mode.
- 2 Select 5-1.
  - •Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group 5.
  - Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu S-1.
- ③ Push [F-2 DTM] then [▼(MENU/GRP)] to select the DTMF root menu.
  - If the DTMF root menu appears, skip pushing [▼(MENU/GRP)]. The DTMF starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (see p. 134)
- ④ Push [F-2 EDT] to enter the DTMF edit menu.
- ⑤Push [F-1 D1] [F-4 D4] to select the desired DTMF memory channel.
- ⑥ Select the desired code by rotating [DIAL].
   Push [F-1 4] or [F-2 ▶] for cursor movement.
   Push [F-3 DEL] to delete the selected code.
- O Repeat steps (5) and (6) until the desired contents are input.
- ⑧ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to return to memory channel selection mode, then select the next memory channel and repeat steps ⑤ and ⑦ for code input, if desired.
- ⑨ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the keyer edit mode.



## ♦ DTMF speed

- The rate at which DTMF memories send individual DTMF characters can be set to accommodate operating needs.
- 1 Select the DTMF root menu as described above.
- ② Push [F-4 SET] to enter the DTMF set mode.
- ③ Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired DTMF speed.
   Four rates are available: "100 ms" is the fastest; "500 ms" is slowest.
  - Push and hold [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default rate.
- ④ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the DTMF set mode and return to the normal FM mode display.

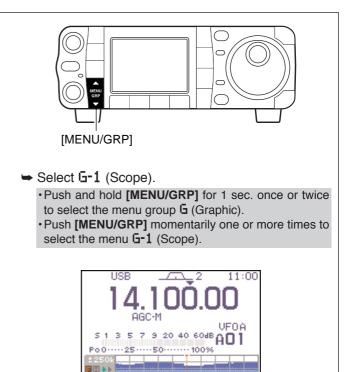


# 5 FUNCTIONS FOR RECEIVE

# Simple band scope

This DSP-based simple band scope allows you to display conditions on the selected band, as well as relative strength of signals. The IC-7000 has two modes for the spectrum indication—one is fix mode, and another one is center mode.

**NOTE:** The IC-7000's simple band scope can monitor the displayed frequency during sweeping. Both the receving and sweeping functions use the same receive circuits which must switch at high speed. This switching sound may be irritating to listen to. If so, set the desired monitoring sound, "FAST SweeP Sound," or change the fast sweep setting, "FAST SweeP," in the scope set mode (p. 72).



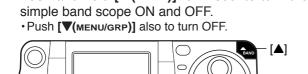
SPD

FIX

SPN

HLD

#### Quick entry → Push and hold [▲(BAND)] for 1 sec. to turn the



 $\subset$ 

## ♦ Fix mode

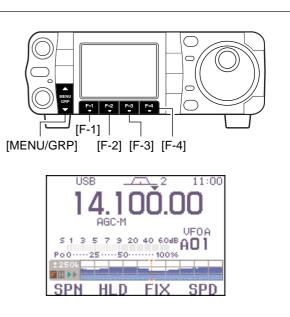
Displays signals within the specified frequency range. The selected band conditions can be observed at a glance when using this mode.

- 1 Set a mode and frequency.
- 2 Select G-1 (Scope).

Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group G (Graphic).
Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to

select the menu G-1 (Scope).

- ③Push [F-3 FIX] momentarily to select the fix mode.
  - "I" and readout frequency indicator appear when the fix mode is selected.
- ④ Push [F-4 SPD] momentarily to select the sweep speed.
  - "▶" or "▶▶" appears when Slow speed or Fast speed is selected, respectively.
- ⑤Push [F-1 SPN] one or more times to select the desired steps.
  - •±10, 25, 50, 100 and 250 kHz are available.
  - •Push and hold [F-1 SPN] for 1 sec. to select the  $\pm 10$  kHz step.
  - "<" or ">" indicates when the displayed frequency is out of range. The scope center position can be set to the displayed frequency by pushing and holding [F-3 FIX] for 1 sec.
  - The simple band scope operates in the peak level hold mode. Peak levels are displayed in the background of the current spectrum in a different color until the receive frequency changes. This can be cleared by pushing and holding **[F-2 HLD]** for 1 sec., or deactivated in the scope set mode. (p. 72)
- ⑥ Push [F-2 HLD] to freeze the current spectrum display.
  - "H" appears while the function is in use.



**NOTE:** If there is a lot of signal noise, turn the preamp OFF and the attenuator ON (p. 72) to reduce the input level and improve the readability of the scope.

## ♦ Center mode

Displays signals around the displayed frequency within the selected span. The set frequency is always displayed at the center of the screen.

- ① Set a mode and frequency.
- 2 Select G-1 (Scope).

Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group G (Graphic).
Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu G-1 (Scope).

③Push [F-3 FIX] momentarily to select the center mode.

• "O" appears when the center mode is selected.

- ④ Push [F-4 SPD] momentarily to select the sweep speed.
  - "▶" or "▶▶" appears when Slow speed or Fast speed is selected, respectively.
- (5) Push [F-1 SPN] one or more times to select the desired steps.
  - •±10, 25, 50, 100 and 250 kHz are available.
  - •Push and hold [F-1 SPN] for 1 sec. to select the  $\pm 10$  kHz step.
  - The simple band scope operates in the peak level hold mode. Peak levels are displayed in the background of the current spectrum in a different color until the receive frequency changes. This can be cleared by pushing and holding **[F-2 HLD]** for 1 sec., or deactivated in the scope set mode. (p. 72)
- 6 Push [F-2 HLD] to freeze the current spectrum display and range.
  - "II" and readout frequency indicator appear while the function is in use.

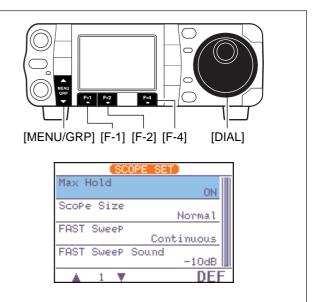
#### $\subset$ C F-3 [F-1] [MENU/GRP] [F-2] [F-3] [F-4] 11:00 AGC-M VFOA 20 40 60dB AD1 э S 1 5 SPN н SPE

**NOTE:** If there is a lot of signal noise, turn the preamp OFF and the attenuator ON (p. 72) to reduce the input level and improve the readability of the scope.

## Scope set mode

This set mode is used to set the peak hold function and scope size setting.

- ① Select G-1 (Scope).
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group G (Graphic).
    Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu G-1 (Scope).
- ②Push and hold [F-4 SPD] for 1 sec. to enter the scope set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select the desired set item.
- ④ Set the desired condition using [DIAL].
- •Push **[F-4 DEF]** for 1 sec. to select a default condition. ⑤ Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** to exit from set mode.



## Scope set mode (Continued)

1 Max Hold This item turns the peak level holding function ON and OFF.	미시 Peak hold is turned ON. (default)	<b>OFF</b> Peak hold is turned OFF.
2 ScoPe Size		
This item toggles the scope size setting between nor-	Normal	Wide
mal and wide.	Normal size is selected. (default)	Wide size is selected.
3 FAST Sweep		
This item selects the sweep speed setting.	Continuous	1 SweeP
This item selects the sweep speed setting.	Continuous Push [F-4 SPD] momentar- ily to toggle the sweep speed Fast and Slow contin- uously. (default)	curs each time [F-4 SPD] is
	Push [F-4 SPD] momentar- ily to toggle the sweep speed Fast and Slow contin-	One Fast speed sweep oc- curs each time <b>[F-4 SPD]</b> is
4 FAST Sweep Sound	Push [F-4 SPD] momentar- ily to toggle the sweep speed Fast and Slow contin-	One Fast speed sweep oc- curs each time <b>[F-4 SPD]</b> is
	Push <b>[F-4 SPD]</b> momentar- ily to toggle the sweep speed Fast and Slow contin- uously. (default)	One Fast speed sweep oc- curs each time <b>[F-4 SPD]</b> is pushed momentarily.
4 FAST Sweep Sound This item sets the monitoring sound level for fast	Push [F-4 SPD] momentar- ily to toggle the sweep speed Fast and Slow contin- uously. (default)	One Fast speed sweep oc- curs each time [F-4 SPD] is pushed momentarily.

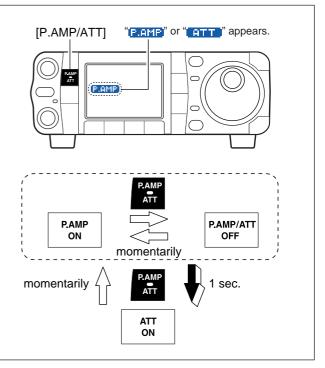
# Preamp and attenuator

The *preamp* amplifies received signals in the receiver input (front end) circuit to improve the S/N ratio and sensitivity. Turn this function ON when receiving weak signals.

The *attenuator* prevents a strong undesired signal near the desired frequency or near your location, such as from a broadcast station, from causing distortion or spurious signals.

Push **[P.AMP/ATT]** momentarily to turn the preamp ON and OFF; push and hold for 1 sec. to turn the attenuator ON.

- "FAMP" appears when the preamp is ON; "ATT" appears when the 12 dB attenuator is ON.
- •Only one of these functions can be activated at a time.

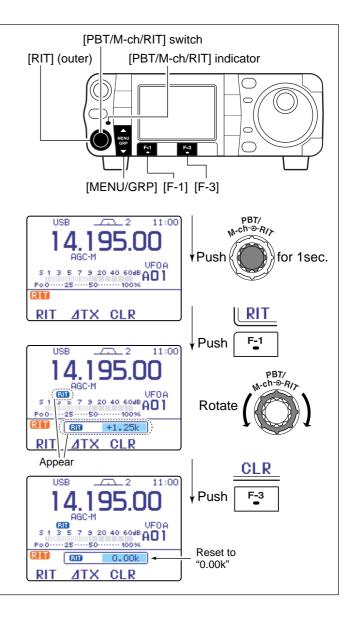


# RIT function

The RIT (Receive Incremental Tuning) function compensates for stations transmitting off-frequency. The function shifts the receive frequency up to ±9.999 kHz in 1 Hz steps (10 Hz steps when cancelling the 1 Hz step readout) without moving the transmit frequency.

- ① Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the Mch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected. •[PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- 2 Push and hold [PBT/M-ch/RIT] for 1 sec. to enter the RIT/ATX mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 RIT] to turn the RIT function ON.
- •"[]]" indicator and the frequency shift appear and [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator lights orange when the function is ON.
- 4 Rotate [RIT] (outer) control to compensate for offfrequency stations.
  - The transmit frequency is not shifted.
- (5) To reset the RIT frequency, push and hold [F-3] CLR] for 1 sec.
- Push [F-3 CLR] momentarily to reset the RIT frequency when "Quick RIT/dTX Clear" in the miscellaneous (others) set mode is ON. (p. 133)
- 6 To cancel the RIT function, push [F-1 RIT] momentarily again.
  - "FTT" indicator disappears.
- **()** Push **[\nabla(MENU/GRP)]** to exit the RIT/ $\Delta$ TX mode.

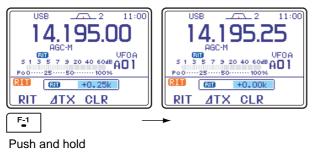
- When RIT and  $\triangle$ TX are ON at the same time, the [**RIT**] (outer) control shifts both the transmit and receive frequencies from the displayed frequency at the same time.



## Calculate function

The shift frequency of the RIT (or  $\Delta$ TX) function can be added/subtracted to the displayed frequency.

While displaying the RIT (and/or ⊿TX) shift frequency, push and hold [F-1 RIT] (or [F-2 dTX]) for 1 sec.



## Practical example

When you find a DX station on 21.025 MHz/CW and the station is picking up stations transmitting slightly up from 21.025 MHz.

- ① Push [F-1 RIT] and [F-2 dTX] to turn both the RIT and ⊿TX functions ON.
- 2 Rotate [RIT] (outer) to find the DX station's receive frequency.
- ③ When you find the DX station's receive frequency, push **IF-1 RITI** to turn the RIT function OFF.
- •Now you can transmit the DX station's receive frequency and receive on the DX station's transmit frequency (21.025 MHz).
- (4) Start transmitting when the station stands by for new callers.

# AGC function

The AGC (auto gain control) controls receiver gain to produce a constant audio output level even when the received signal strength is varied by fading, etc.

The transceiver has 3 AGC characteristics (time constant; fast, mid, slow) for non-FM/WFM mode.

## **AGC** time constant selection

①Select non-FM/WFM mode with [MODE].

- 2 Select M-3.
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  - •Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- ③ Push [F-3 ĤĠĊ] several times to select AGC fast, AGC medium (MID) AGC slow or AGC OFF.

 "AGC-F," "AGC-M," "AGC-S" or "AGC-X" appears when AGC fast, AGC medium (MID), AGC slow or AGC OFF is selected, respectively.

" $\square$  (OFF) appears when AGC time constant OFF is set for one of FAST, MID, SLOW setting in AGC set mode.

## ♦ Setting the AGC time constant

[MENU/GRP] [F-2] [F-3] [F-4]

#### • Selectable AGC time constant (unit: sec.)

[DIAL]

Mode	Default	Selectable AGC time constant
SSB	0.3 (FAST) 2.0 (MID) 6.0 (SLOW)	OFF, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0
CW	0.1 (FAST) 0.5 (MID) 1.2 (SLOW)	OFF, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0
RTTY	0.1 (FAST) 0.5 (MID) 1.2 (SLOW)	OFF, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0
AM	3.0 (FAST) 5.0 (MID) 7.0 (SLOW)	OFF, 0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0
FM/WFM	0.1 (FAST)	Fixed

 Select the desired mode other than FM/WFM modes.
 Select M-3.

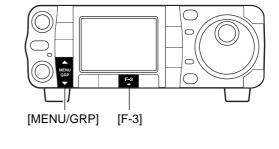
Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to

select the menu M-3.

- ③ Push and hold [F-3 ÅGC] for 1 sec. to enter the AGC set mode.
- ④ Push one of [F-2 FAST], [F-3 MID], [F-4 SLOW] to select the desired AGC time constant.
- (5) Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired time constant.
  •AGC time constants can be selected between 0.1 to 8.0 sec. (depends on mode) or turned OFF.
  - Push and hold [F-2 FAST], [F-3 MID] or [F-4 SLOW] for 1 sec. to select a default value each for fast, mid. and slow, respectively.
- 6 Select another mode other than FM/WFM. Repeat steps ④ and ⑤, if desired.

· See table to the right for available time constants.

⑦ Push **[▼(мемu/grp)]** to exit the AGC set mode.



The FM/WFM modes AGC time constant is fixed as 'FAST' (0.1 sec.) and AGC time constant cannot be selected.

# IF filter selection

The transceiver has 3 passband IF filter widths for each mode.

For SSB and CW modes, the passband width can be set from 50 to 3600 Hz in 50 or 100 Hz steps. A total of 41 passband widths are available.

For RTTY mode, the passband width can be set from 50 to 2700 Hz in 50 or 100 Hz steps. A total of 32 passband widths are available.

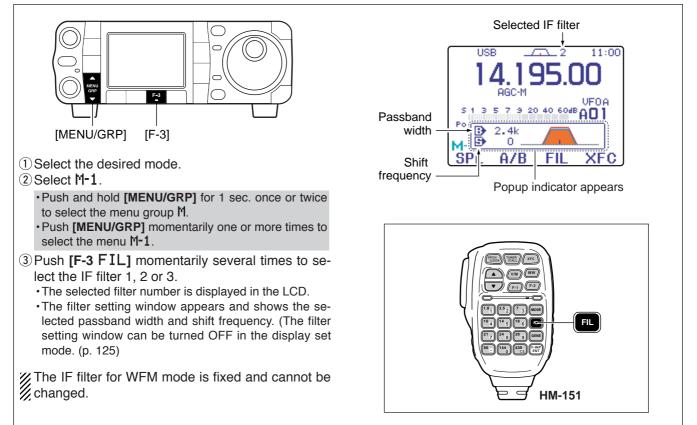
For AM mode, the passband width can be set from 200 Hz to 10 kHz in 200 Hz steps. A total of 50 passband widths are available.

For FM mode, the passband width is fixed and 3 passband widths are available.

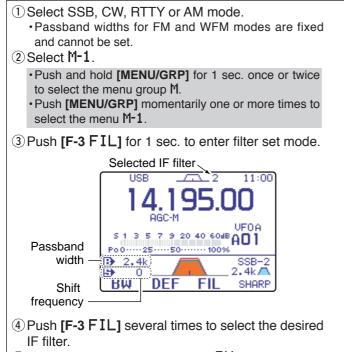
For WFM mode, the passband width is fixed at 280 kHz.

The filter selection is automatically memorized in each mode. The PBT shift frequencies are automatically memo-rized in each filter.

## ♦ IF filter selection



# ♦ FIlter passband width setting (SSB/CW/RTTY/AM only)



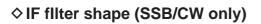
- (5) While pushing and holding [F-1 BW], rotate [DIAL] to set the desired passband width.
  - The passband width can be set within the range as shown in the table to the right.

•Push [F-2 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default value. (6) Repeat steps (4) to (5) if desired.

() Push [ $\mathbf{V}(MENU/GRP$ )] to exit the filter set mode.

The PBT shift frequencies are cleared when the passband width is changed.

This filter set mode screen graphically displays the PBT shift frequencies.



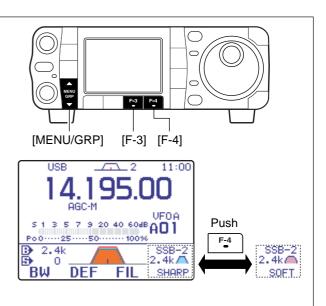
The type of DSP filter shape for each SSB and CW can be selected independently from soft and sharp.

- 1 Select SSB or CW mode.
- 2 Select M-1.
  - •Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  - Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-1.
- ③ Push [F-3 FIL] for 1 sec. to enter filter set mode.
- ④ Push **[F-3 FIL]** several times to select the desired IF filter.
- ⑤ Push [F-4] to select the filter shape from "SHARP" and "SOFT."
- <sup>6</sup> Push **[▼(меми/grp)]** to exit the filter set mode.
- Specified selectivity (p. 148) is measured with this parameter set to SHARP.

	./	F <sup>2</sup> F <sup>3</sup>	[F-3] [DIAL]
Mode	Filter	Default	Range (Steps)
SSB	FIL1 FIL2 FIL3	3.0 kHz 2.4 kHz 1.8 kHz	50–500 Hz (50 Hz)/ 600–3.6 kHz (100 Hz)
CW	FIL1 FIL2 FIL3	1.2 kHz 500 Hz 250 Hz	50–500 Hz (50 Hz)/ 600–3.6 kHz (100 Hz)
RTTY	FIL1 FIL2 FIL3	2.4 kHz 500 Hz 250 Hz	50–500 Hz (50 Hz)/ 600–2.7 kHz (100 Hz)
AM	FIL1 FIL2 FIL3	9.0 kHz 6.0 kHz 3.0 kHz	200 Hz–10.0 kHz (200 Hz)
FM*	FIL1 FIL2 FIL3	15 kHz 10 kHz 7.0 kHz	Fixed
WFM	FIL	280 kHz	Fixed

 $(\bigcirc)$ 

\*: When the IF filter is selected FIL2 or FIL3 in the FM mode operation, the Tx IF filter's passband width is fixed narrow selection (2.5 kHz).

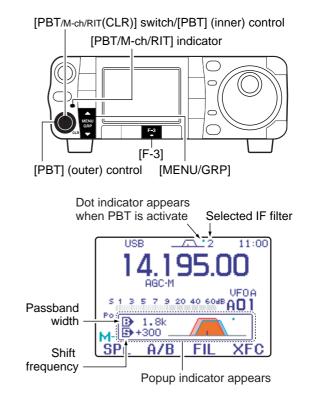


# ■ Twin PBT operation

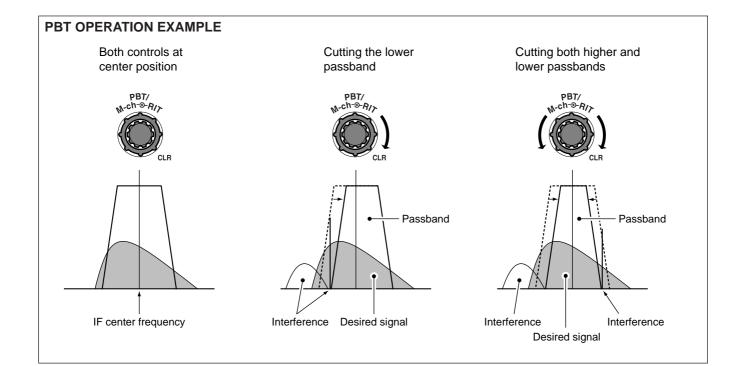
The general PBT (Passband Tuning) function electronically narrows the IF passband width by shifting the IF frequency slightly outside of the IF filter passband to reject interference. This transceiver uses the DSP circuit for the PBT function. Moving both **[PBT**/M-ch/RIT] controls to the same position shifts the IF.

- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the twin PBT function, if the M-ch-RIT is selected.
  - •[PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) lights.
  - The passband settings window shows the passband width and shift frequency graphically. (The passband settings window can be turned OFF in the display set mode. p. 125)
- ➡ When M-1 is selected, push and hold [F-3 FIL] for 1 sec. to enter the filter set mode. Current passband width and shift frequency is displayed in the filter set mode.
- To set the [PBT/M-ch/RIT] controls to the center positions, push and hold [PBT/M-ch/RIT(clr)] for 1 sec.

The limit of the variable range depends on the passband width and mode. The limit of the variable range is half of the passband width, and PBT is adjustable in 100 (AM) or 25 Hz steps (other modes).



- •[PBT] controls should normally be set to the center positions (PBT setting is cleared) when there is no interference.
- •When PBT is used, the audio tone may be changed.
- •Not available for FM or WFM modes.
- •While rotating [PBT], noise may occur. This comes from
- the DSP unit and does not indicate an equipment mal-
- function.



Appears [NB/ADJ]

NB

USB

VUX

AGC

42°

40

COM AGC TBW

 $\frown$ 

11:00

6048 AO 1

# Noise blanker

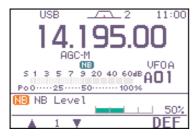
The noise blanker eliminates pulse-type noise such as from car ignitions. The noise blanker is not available for WFM mode.

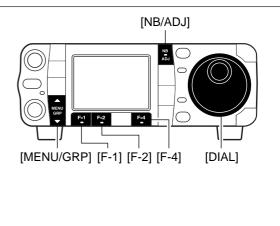
- Push [NB/ADJ] momentarily to toggle the noise blanker ON and OFF.
  - "TE" indicator appears when the NB function is ON.

When using the noise blanker, received signals may be distorted if they are excessively strong or the noise type is other than impulse. Nearby strong signals can also cause the noise blanker to create distortion. Turn the noise blanker function OFF, or adjust the noise blanker level to a shallower setting (see below) in this case.



- ① Push and hold **[NB/ADJ]** for 1 sec. to enter the noise blanker set mode.
- ② Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select the desired set item.
- ③ Rotate [DIAL] to adjust the desired condition.
   Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default value.
- ④ Push [NB/ADJ] (or push [▼(MENU/GRP)]) to exit the noise blanker set mode.





## 1. NB Level

This item adjusts the noise blanker level. The noise blanker level can be adjusted from 0 to 100%.

50% (default)

## 2. NB Width

This item adjusts the noise blanker width. The noise blanker width can be adjusted from 1 to 100.

50 (default)

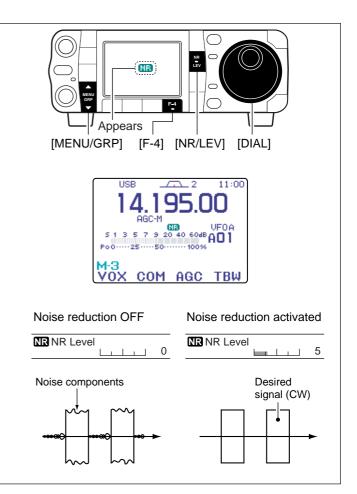
# Noise reduction

The noise reduction function enhances desired signals in the presence of noise by using the DSP circuit. The amount of enhancement is adjustable.

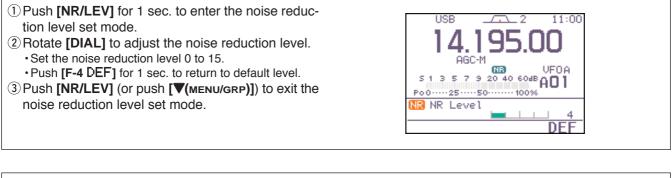
Push [NR/LEV] momentarily to toggle the noise reduction ON and OFF.

• "IIB" indicator appears when the NR function is ON.

The noise reduction level can result in audio signal masking. Set the noise reduction level for maximum readability as described below.



## Noise reduction set mode



## NR Level

This item adjusts the noise reduction level. The noise reduction level can be adjusted from 0 to 15.

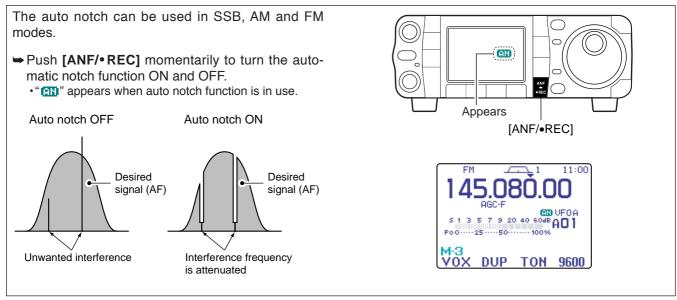
4 (default)

# Notch function

This transceiver has auto and manual notch functions. The auto notch function automatically attenuates up to 3 beat tones, tuning signals, etc., even if they are moving. The manual notch can be set to attenuate a frequency via the manual notch filter set mode.

- While in SSB and AM modes, push [ANF/• REC] or [MNF/ADJ] to toggle the notch function between auto, manual and OFF.
  - Both of the auto and manual notch functions can be activated at the same time.
- While in CW and RTTY modes, push [MNF/ADJ] to toggle the manual notch function ON and OFF.
- ➡ While in FM mode, push [ANF/• REC] to toggle the auto notch function ON and OFF.
  - •" (III)" appears when auto notch function is in use.
  - •"MH" appears when manual notch function is in use.
  - •Manual notch filter settings are described on the next page.

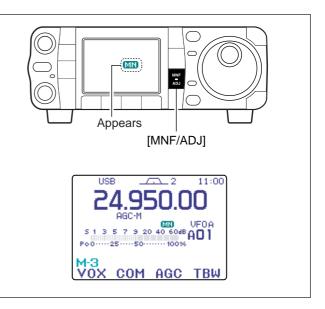
## ♦ Auto notch function



## ♦ Manual notch function

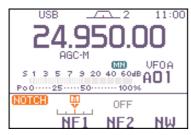
The manual notch function can be used in SSB, CW, RTTY and AM modes.

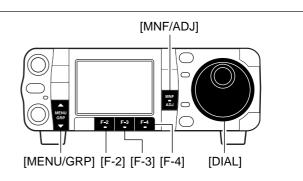
- Push [MNF/ADJ] momentarily to turn the manual notch function ON and OFF.
  - "MIN" appears when manual notch function is in use.
  - Set the frequency for manual notch filtering via the manual notch filter set mode. (shown below)
  - Even when both of the manual notch filters, "NF1" and "NF2," are set to OFF in the manual notch filter set mode, "NF1" is automatically turned ON if the manual notch function is ON.



## Manual notch filter set mode

- ①Push **[MNF/ADJ]** for 1 sec. to enter the manual notch filter set mode.
- ② Push [F-2 NF1] or [F-3 NF2] to select the desired filter ON and OFF.
- ③Rotate [DIAL] to adjust the selected filter frequency.
  - $\bullet$  Push [F-4 NW] to toggle the filter width from narrow, middle and wide.
- ④ Push [MNF/ADJ] (or push [▼(MENU/GRP)]) to exit the manual notch filter set mode.





While adjusting the manual notch filter, noise may be heard. This comes from the DSP unit and does not indicate an equipment malfunction.

# Voice squelch control function

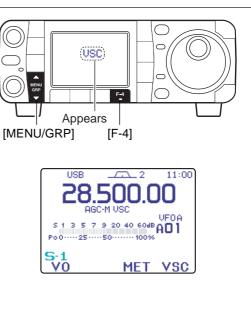
This function is useful when you don't want to hear unmodulated signals. When the voice squelch control function is activated, the transceiver checks received signals for voice components.

If a receiver signal includes voice components, and the tone of the voice components changes within 1 sec., squelch opens. If the received signal includes no voice components or the tone of the voice components does not change within 1 sec., squelch closes.

- ① Select S-1 or S-2.
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group S.
    Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to

select the menu S-1 or S-2.

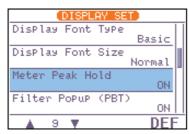
- ② Push [F-4 USC] to turn the VSC (Voice Squelch Control) function ON.
  - $\ensuremath{\cdot}^{*}\ensuremath{\Downarrow}\ensuremath{\mathbb{SC}}$  " appears when the function is activated.
- \*The VSC function is available for phone modes (SSB, AM, FM, WFM).
- The VSC function can also be used for scanning
- Ø operation in AM, FM or WFM modes. (p. 112)

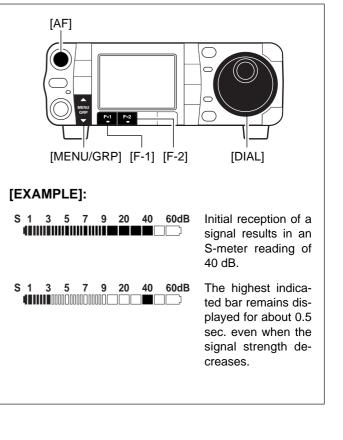


# Meter peak hold function

The S-meter has a peak level holding function. The peak level of the received signal strength is indicated for 0.5 sec. (approx). This function can be deactivated in the display set mode ("Meter Peak Hold"; see p. 125) if desired.

- ①Push [AF(set)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- ② Push [F-2 DISP] to enter the display set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "Meter Peak Hold."
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to turn the meter peak hold setting ON and OFF.
- Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default condition.
- (5) Push [V(MENU/GRP)] twice to return to normal operating mode.





# 6 FUNCTIONS FOR TRANSMIT

# ■ VOX function

The VOX (Voice-Operated Transmission) function switches between transmit and receive with your voice. This function provides an opportunity for hands-free operation or to input log entries into your computer, etc., while operating.

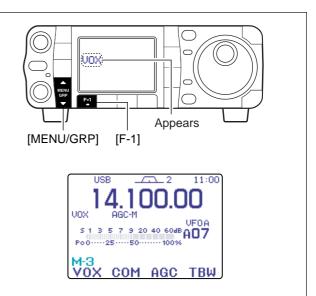
Select a phone mode (SSB, AM, FM) with [MODE].
 Select M-3.

• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.

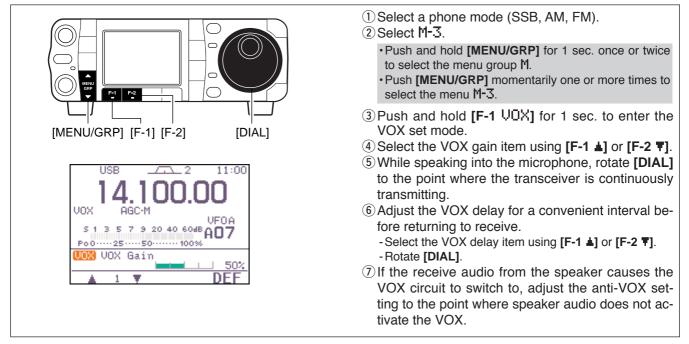
③Push [F-1 UOX] to toggle the VOX function ON and OFF.

• "UOX is in use.



The VOX gain, ANTI-VOX and VOX delay can be set in VOX set mode.

## Adjusting the VOX function



# ♦ VOX set mode

## 1. VOX Gain

This item adjusts the VOX gain for the VOX (voice activated transmit) function. This setting can be adjusted from 0 to 100% in 1% steps. · Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default gain.

# 2. Anti-VOX

This item adjusts the ANTI-VOX gain for the VOX (voice activated transmit) function. This setting can be adjusted from 0 to 100% in 1% steps. · Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default gain.

# 3. VOX Delay

[MENU/GRP]

4-3

LISE

AGC-M

Po0----25----50-----100%

nм

SSB

5 1 3 5 7 9 20 40 60dBAOI

TB₩

WIDE

AGC

This item adjusts the VOX (Voice-activated Transmit) delay time. The delay time can be adjusted from 0 to 2.0 sec. in 0.1 sec. steps.

• Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default delay time.

# ■ Transmit filter width setting (SSB only)

11:00

**UFOA** 

TBμ

The transmit filter width for SSB mode can be selected from wide, middle and narrow.

F-4

[F-4]

(2) Select 11-3.

· Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.

③ Push and hold [F-4 TBW] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the desired transmit filter width from narrow. middle and wide.

- Push [F-4 TBW] momentarily to display the selected TX filter width.
- •The transmit filter width window appears for showing the selected TX filter width each time [F-4 TBW] is pushed.
- •The following filters are specified as the default. Each of the filter widths can be set in the quick set mode. (pgs. 121, 122)
  - WIDE : 100 Hz to 2900 Hz

① Select an SSB mode (USB or LSB) with [MODE].

- · Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.

- - MID : 300 Hz to 2700 Hz
  - NAR : 500 Hz to 2500 Hz



6

50% 50% (default)

50%

0.2s

**— I** I I

50% (default)

0.2 sec. (default)

# Break-in function

The break-in function is used in CW mode to automatically switch the transceiver between transmit and receive when keying. The IC-7000 is capable of full break-in or semi break-in.

## ♦ Semi break-in operation

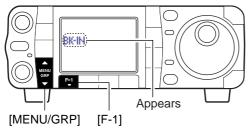
During semi break-in operation, the transceiver selects transmit when keying, then automatically returns to receive after a pre-set time from when you stop keying.

#### • Semi break-in operation

① Push [MODE] to select CW or CW-R mode.

- 2 Select M-3.
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  - Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- ③Push [F-1 BRK] once or twice to turn the semi break-in function ON.

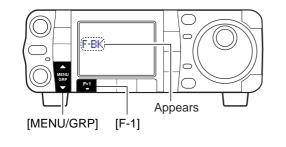
• "BK-IN" appears.



When using a paddle, set "Key SPeed" in the quick set mode to adjust the keying speed. (p. 122)

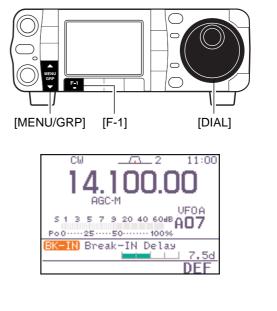
## ♦ Full break-in operation

During full break-in operation, the transceiver automatically switches to receive between keying dots and dashes so that the operator can hear activity on the channel when transmitting.



#### •Break-in delay setting

- ① Push [MODE] to select CW or CW-R mode.
- 2 Select M-3.
- ③ Push and hold [F-1 BRK] for 1 sec. to enter the break-in delay time set mode.
- ④ Rotate **[DIAL]** to set the break-in delay time (the delay from transmit to receive).



① Push [MODE] to select CW or CW-R mode.

2 Select M-3.

- Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to
- select the menu M-3.
- ③Push [F-1 BRK] once or twice to turn the semi break-in function ON. • "F-BK" appears.
- When using a paddle, set "Key Speed" in the quick set mode to adjust the keying speed. (p. 122)

# ■ **⊿**TX function

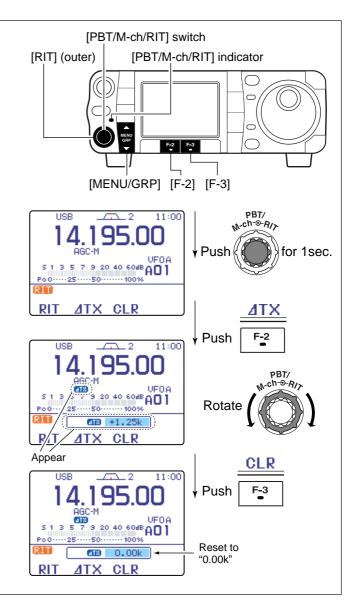
The  $\triangle$ TX function shifts the transmit frequency up to  $\pm 9.999$  kHz in 1 Hz steps (10 Hz steps when cancelling the 1 Hz step readout) without moving the receive frequency.

- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the Mch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
   • [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- ② Push and hold **[PBT/M-ch/RIT]** for 1 sec. to enter the RIT/⊿TX mode.
- ③ Push [F-2 ⊿TX] to turn the ⊿TX function ON.
  - "
     "
     "
     indicator and the frequency shift appear and [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator lights orange when the function is ON.
- ④ Rotate **[RIT]** (outer) control to shift the transmitter frequency.
  - The receive frequency is not shifted.
- ⑤ To reset the ⊿TX frequency, push [F-3 CLR] for 1 sec.
  - •Push [F-3 CLR] momentarily to reset the RIT frequency when "Quick RIT/dTX Clear" in the miscellaneous (others) set mode is ON. (p. 133)
- ⑥ To cancel the ⊿TX function, push [F-2 ⊿TX] momentarily again.

• "TR" indicator disappears.

⑦ Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** to exit the RIT/⊿TX mode.

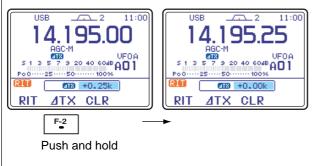
When RIT and  $\Delta$ TX are ON at the same time, [**RIT**] (outer) control shifts both the transmit and receive frequencies from the displayed frequency at the same time.



## Calculate function

The frequency shift of the (RIT or)  $\varDelta\text{TX}$  function can be added/subtracted to the displayed frequency.

While displaying the (RIT and/or)  $\Delta TX$  shift frequency, push and hold ([F-1 RIT] or) [F-2  $\Delta TX$ ] for 1 sec.



## Practical example

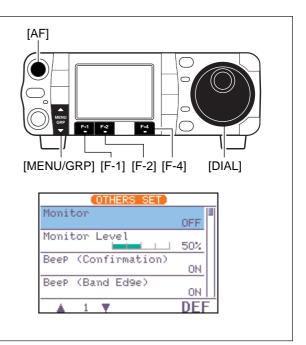
When you find a DX station on 21.025 MHz/CW and the station is picking up stations transmitting slightly up from 21.025 MHz.

- ① Push [F-1 RIT] and [F-2  $\varDelta$ TX] to turn both the RIT and  $\varDelta$ TX functions ON.
- ② Rotate [RIT] (outer) to find the DX station's receive frequency.
- When you find the DX station's receive frequency, push [F-1 RIT] to turn the RIT function OFF.
   Now you can transmit the DX station's receive frequency and receive the DX station's transmit frequency (21.025 MHz).
- ④ Start transmitting while the station is standing by.

# Monitor function

The monitor function allows you to monitor your transmitted signals in any mode through the speaker. The CW side tone functions regardless of the monitor function setting.

- Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- ② Push [F-4 OTH] to enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 4] several times to select "Monitor."
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to turn the monitor function ON.
- •Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default condition. ⑤ Push [F-2 T] to select "Monitor Level."
- 6 Rotate [DIAL] to adjust the monitor level.
- •Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default level.
   ⑦ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to return to normal operating mode.
- W Use headphones to prevent feedback.



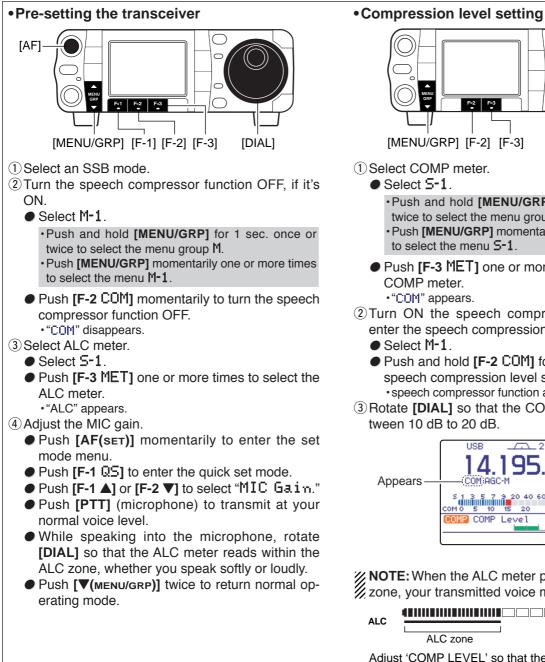
# Speech compressor

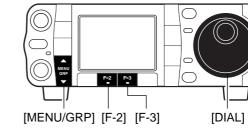
The IC-7000 has a built-in, low distortion speech compressor circuit. This circuit increases your average talk power in SSB mode and is especially useful for DX-ing or noisy condition when the receiving station is having difficulty copying your signal.

- 1 Select an SSB mode.
- 2 Select M-3.
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  - Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-3.
- ③ Push [F-2 CDM] momentarily to turn the speech compressor function ON and OFF.
  "COM" appears.



## Compression level setting





1) Select COMP meter.

Select 5-1.

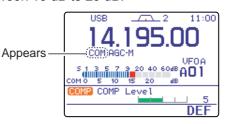
• Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group  $\mathbf{S}$ .

• Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu 5-1.

• Push [F-3 MET] one or more times to select the COMP meter. •"COM" appears.

(2) Turn ON the speech compressor function and enter the speech compression level set mode.

- Select II-1.
- Push and hold [F-2 COM] for 1 sec. to enter the speech compression level set mode.
- · speech compressor function automatically turns ON. 3 Rotate [DIAL] so that the COMP meter reads between 10 dB to 20 dB.



**NOTE:** When the ALC meter peaks below the ALC zone, your transmitted voice may be distorted.



ALC zone

Adjust 'COMP LEVEL' so that the ALC meter peaks above the ALC zone.

## COMP Level

This item adjusts the speech compression level. The speech compression level can be adjusted from 0 to 10.

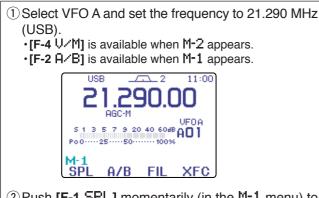
• Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default level.

5 5 (default)

# Split frequency operation

Split frequency operation allows you to transmit and receive in the same mode on two different frequencies. The split frequency operation is basically performed using 2 VFO frequencies (VFO A and VFO B) on the main and sub readouts.

The following is an example of setting 21.290 MHz for receiving and 21.310 MHz for transmitting.



- ② Push [F-1 SPL] momentarily (in the M-1 menu) to turn the split function ON, then push and hold [F-2 A.✓B] (M-1) for 1 sec.
  - The equalized transmit (VFO B) frequency and "SPE" appear on the LCD.
  - The quick split function is much more convenient for selecting the transmit frequency. See the next page for details.

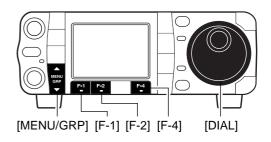


- ③ Rotate [DIAL] while pushing and holding [F-4 XFC] (M-1) to set the transmit frequency to 21.310 MHz.
  - •[XFC] on the HM-151 can also be used.
  - The transmit frequency can be monitored while pushing and holding [F-4 XFC].



④ Now you can receive on 21.290 MHz and transmit on 21.310 MHz.

To swap the transmit and receive frequencies, push [F-2  $\overline{H}$ /B] (M-1) to exchange the VFO A and VFO B.



#### CONVENIENT

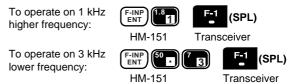
DIRECT SHIFT FREQUENCY INPUT

The shift frequency can be entered directly.

① Push **[F-INP/ENT]** (HM-151).

- ② Enter the desired shift frequency with the digit keys.
  - •1 kHz to 1 MHz shifts can be entered.
  - •When you require a minus shift direction, push [50/•] before entering the shift.
- ③Push [F-1 SPL] (M-1) on the transceiver's front panel.
  - The shift frequency is input to the sub readout and the split function is turned ON.

#### [EXAMPLE]



#### CONVENIENT

#### SPLIT LOCK FUNCTION

Accidentally releasing [F-4 XFC] (M-1) while rotating [DIAL] changes the receive frequency. To prevent this, use both the split lock and dial lock functions to change the transmit frequency only. The split lock function cancels the dial lock function while pushing and holding [F-4 XFC] (M-1) during split frequency operation.

The dial lock's effectiveness during split frequency operation can be selected in the miscellaneous (others) set mode for both receive and transmit frequencies; or only the receive frequency. (p. 129)

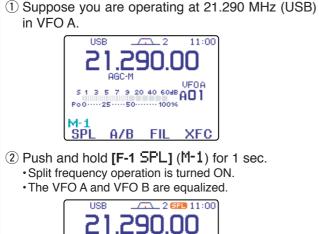
# Quick split function

When you find a DX station, an important consideration is how to set the split frequency.

When you push and hold **[F-1 SPL]** (M-1) for 1 sec., split frequency operation is turned ON, the undisplayed VFO is automatically changed according to the plus/minus shift frequency programmed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 129) or equalized with the displayed VFO when 0.000 MHz (default) is programmed as the split offset frequency.

This shortens the time needed to start split frequency operation.

Quick split operation is turned ON by default but can be turned OFF in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 129).

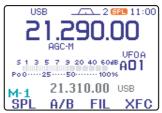




# [AF]

Menu selection (Example: M-1)
Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M. Selection from: M, 5 or G (Graphic)
Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-1. Selection from: M-1, M-2 or M-3

- ③ While pushing and holding [F-4 XFC] (M-1), rotate [DIAL] to set the frequency offset between transmit and receive.
  - •[XFC] on the HM-151 can also be used.
  - •The transmit frequency can be monitored while pushing and holding [F-4 XFC].



## PRACTICAL EXAMPLE

When you are searching for DX stations and you suspect that a DX station may say "up 'X' kHz" for their receive frequency:

#### **OPERATION 1**

- ① Push and hold [F-1 SPL] (M-1) for 1 sec. to standby for split operation.
- If the DX station's operator says "up 10 kHz."
   Push [F-INP/ENT], [1], [0] then [F-1 SPL] (M-1).
   Or, rotate the tuning dial.

#### **OPERATION 2**

If the DX station's operator says "down 5 kHz" before you enter standby for split operation:

→ Push [F-INP/ENT], [•], [5] then [F-1 SPL] (II-1).

• The split function is turned ON and "5 kHz down" frequency is entered in the sub readout.

## PRACTICAL EXAMPLE

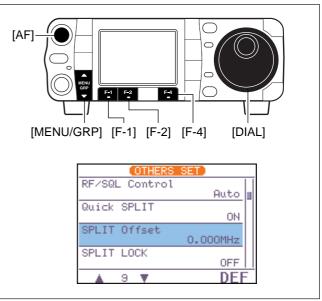
When you are working a pile-up and you want to start split frequency operation to simplify picking out stations:

- Push [F-1 SPL] (M-1) momentarily, and push and hold [F-2 A·B] (M-1) for 1 sec.
   The transmit (VFO B) frequency is equalized to the receive (VFO A) frequency and "EPA" appears.
- 2 Rotate [DIAL] to set your receive frequency in the VFO A.
- ③ Announce your receive frequency.
- ④ After you catch one of the calling stations' call signs, push and hold the PTT switch to respond.
   While pushing and holding [F-4 XFC], you can monitor your transmit frequency.

## ♦ Split offset frequency setting

By setting an often-used split frequency offset in advance, you can operate the quick split function to select split operation at the push of one key.

- ①Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- ② Push [F-4 ŪTH] to enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select "SPLIT Offset."
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to set the desired split offset.
  - •The split offset can be selected from –9.999 MHz to +9.999 MHz.
  - Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default value.
- ⑤ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to return the normal operating mode.



## ♦ Quick split setting

- ①Enter the miscellaneous (others) set mode as above.
- ② Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select "Quick SPLIT," then rotate [DIAL] to select the desired setting.
- •Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default setting.
   ③ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to return the normal operating mode.

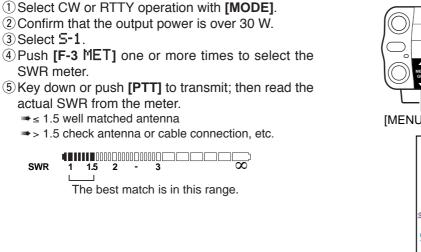
OTHERS	BET .	
BeeP Level Limit	t ON	
RF/SQL Control	Auto	
Quick SPLIT	ON	
SPLIT Offset	0.000MHz	
🔺 8 🔻	DEF	-

# Measuring SWR

The IC-7000 has a built-in circuit for measuring antenna SWR—no external equipment or special adjustments are necessary.

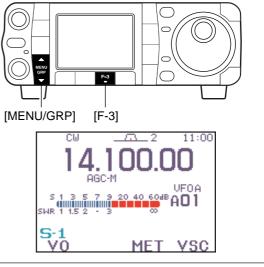
The IC-7000 can measure SWR in 2 ways—spot measurement and plot measurement.

## ♦ Spot measurement



#### Menu selection (Example: S-1)

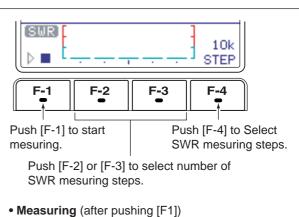
- Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group 5. Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic)
- Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu S-1. Selection from: S-1, S-2 or S-3



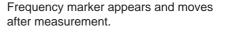
## ♦ Plot measurement

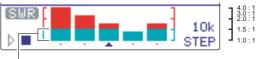


- ① Confirm that the output power is over 30 W.
- ② Set the center frequency for the SWR to be measured.
- 3 Select G-3 (SWR meter).
- ④ Push and hold [F-4 STEP] for 1 sec. one or more times to select the desired measuring step from 10, 50, 100 and 500 kHz.
- (5) Push [F-2] or [F-3] one or more times to select the desired number of measuring steps from 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, and 13 steps.
- 6 Push [F-1] to start the measuring.
- ⑦ Push and hold [PTT] on the microphone to measure the SWR.
  - Frequency marker, "▲," appears below SWR graph.RTTY mode is automatically selected.
- (8) When releasing **[PTT]**, the frequency marker and frequency indication move to the next frequency to be measured.
- (9) Repeat steps ⑦ and ⑧ to measure SWR over the entire frequency range.
- 10 When the measured SWR is less than 1.5:1, the antenna is well matched with the transceiver in the measured frequency range.









-The antenna is well matched in this range

# **VOICE RECORDER FUNCTIONS**

# Digital voice recorder

The transceiver has digital voice memories, up to 4 channels for transmit, and up to 99 channels for receive. A maximum message length of 120 sec. can be recorded into a receive channel (total message length for all channels of up to 1500 sec.), and a total message length of 90 sec. can be recorded in transmit channels.

Providing a transmission memory is very convenient for repeated CQ and number transmissions at contest times, as well as when making consecutive calls in DX'pedition.

#### Menu group selection

Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic)

Menu selection (Example: S) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Selection from: 5-1, 5-2 or 5-3



# Recording a received audio

#### ♦ Basic recording

- ① Select the desired frequency and mode.
- 2 Select 5-1.
- ③ Push [F-1 UŪ] to call up the voice recorder menu.
   If the transmit voice memory channels (T1–T4) screen appears, push [▼(MENU/GRP)] then push [F-1 RX] to

select the receive voice memory channel.
If the voice root menu appears, push [F-1 RX] to select the receive voice memory menu. The voice recorder starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 134)

④ Push and hold [ANF/• REC] for 1 sec. to start recording while receiving a signal.

· Records audio into the new channel.

- "[FEE]" appears and the recording timer counts up.
- The operating frequency, mode and current time are programmed as the memory names automatically.
- ⑤ Push and hold [ANF/• REC] for 1 sec. again to stop recording.
  - •"RED" disappears.
  - Recording is automatically terminated after 120 sec. or when a total of the recorded time becomes 1500 sec.
- 6 Push [V(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice recoder mode.

The voice recoder stores the received audio in 15 sec. blocks. Thus the total recording time is reduced by 15 sec. each time recording is stopped.

#### CONVENIENT

#### **MIC Memo FUNCTION**

While recordig received audio, speak into microphone (without pushing **[PTT]**) to record your comment, impression or some information with recorded audio.

This function can be activated in the voice set mode. (p. 99)



 $\overline{}$ 

ANF

[ANF/•REC]

 $\overline{(2)}$ 

11:00

6048 AO 1

FIL XFC

REC

Blinks

# One-touch voice recording

To record the receiving signal contents immediately, one-touch voice recording is available.

- Push and hold [ANF/• REC] for 1 sec. while receiving a signal to start recording.
   "[REC]" blinks.
  - Records audio into the new channel.
- ②Push and hold [ANF/•REC] for 1 sec. again to stop recording.
  - Recording is automatically terminated after 120 sec. or when a total of the recorded time becomes 1500 sec.

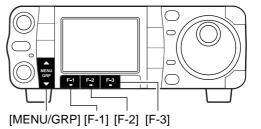


#### ① Select 5-1.

- Push [F-1 UŪ] to call up the voice recorder menu.
   If the transmit voice memory channels (T1–T4) screen appears, push [V(MENU/GRP)] then push [F-1 RX] to
  - select the receive voice memory channel.
    If the voice root menu appears, push [F-1 RX] to select the receive voice memory menu. The voice recorder starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select the desired recorded contents, then push [F-3 PLY] to playback.

#### •"(FLY)" appears.

- ④ Push [F-3 FLY] again (or push [▼(MENU/GRP)]) to stop playback, if desired.
   • Playback is terminated automatically when all of the
  - recorded contents in the channel are played.
- (5) Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice recoder mode.



'R

	CUOIT	CEIRXD	1170s
1	14.195.00	D USB	57s
2	144.424.00	D USB	112s
З	434.620.00	D FM	34s
4	1.873.00	D LSB	120s
5	1.800.00	D CW	2s 🗍
	2005	5-10-17	9:52
		PLY	CLR
	•	PLY	CLR
			<b>CLR</b> 1170s
1	<b>U01</b> 14.195.0	CE RX	
_		CE RX	1170s
_	14.195.0	CE RX O USB O USB	1170s 57s
(PLY	14.195.0 144.424.0	CERX O USB O USB O FM	1170s 57s 99s
(PLY 3	14.195.0 144.424.0 434.620.0	CERX O USB O USB O USB O FM O LSB	1170s 57s 99s 34s
<b>E</b> 3 4	14.195.0 144.424.0 434.620.0 1.873.0 1.800.0	CERX O USB O USB O USB O FM O LSB	1170s 57s 99s 34s 120s

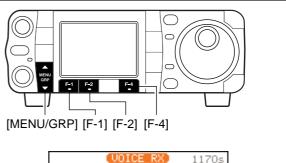
Menu group selectionPush [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec.<br/>Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic)Menu selection (Example: S)<br/>Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily.<br/>Selection from: 5-1, 5-2 or 5-3Either<br/>∆ or ∇

# Erasing the recorded contents

The recorded contents can be erased independently by channel.

① Select 5-1.

- ② Push [F-1 ↓Ū] to call up the voice recorder menu.
   If the transmit voice memory channels (T1–T4) screen appears, push [▼(MENU/GRP)] then push [F-1 RX] to select the receive voice memory channel.
  - If the voice root menu appears, push **[F-1** RX] to select the receive voice memory menu. The voice recorder starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 134)
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select the desired recorded channel to be erased, then push and hold [F-4 CLR] for 1 sec. to erase the contents.
- ④ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice recoder mode.
- Be careful!--the erased contents CANNOT be re-



	VOICE RX	1170s
1	14.195.00 USB	57s
2	144.424.00 USB	112s
3	434.620.00 FM	34s
4	1.873.00 LSB	120s
5	1.800.00 CW	2s 🗍
	2005-10- 7	9:52
	V V PLY	CLR

Erasing a long message takes a little time, and a maximum message length (120 sec./channel) takes over 1 sec.

When resetting the CPU, the transceiver clears all of the voice memory area (1500 sec.), and it takes almost 30 sec. In these cases, you can use the record function, but you cannot playback the recorded contents during the clearing process unitil it is completed.

# Recording a message for transmit

# ♦ Recording

To transmit a message using a voice recorder, record the desired message in advance as described below.

## ① Select 5-1.

- ② Push [F-1 UD] then [▼(MENU/GRP)] to select the voice root menu.
  - If the voice root menu appears, skip the pushing [▼(MENU/GRP)]. The voice starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 134)
- ③ Push [F-3 MIC] to select the voice memory recording mode.
- ④ Push [▲(MENU/GRP)] then rotate [DIAL] to adjust the mic gain control so that the "REC LEVEL" indicator reads within maximum.
  - Speak into the microphone without pushing [PTT].
  - Push [F-4 DEF] to select the default mic gain.
  - Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to exit the mic gain adjustment condition.
- (5) Push [F-1 ▲▼] to select the desired memory channel, then push and hold [F-3 REC] for 1 sec. to start recording.

Speak into the microphone without pushing [PTT].Previously recorded contents are cleared.

- ⑥ Push [F-3 REC] again (or push [▼(MENU/GRP)]) to stop recording.
  - Recording is automatically terminated when the total time of recorded messages, T1–T4, becomes 90 sec.
- Push [V(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice memory screen.

# Confirming/Erasing the recorded message

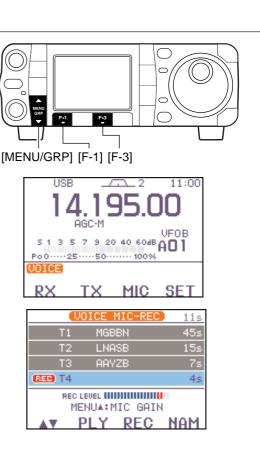
## • Playing the recorded contents

- 1 Call up the voice memory recording mode as described in steps 1 to 3 as shown above.
- ② Push [F-1 ▲▼] to select the desired memory channel, then push [F-2 PLY] to start playback.

• "FLY" appears.



③ Push [F-2 PL'Y] again to stop playback, if desired.
 ④ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice memory mode



## • Erasing the recoded contents

- (1) Call up the voice memory recording mode as described in steps (1) to (3) as shown above.
- ② Push [F-1 4] to select the desired memory channel to be erased, push [F-2 PLY] to start playback.
  "FLY" appears.

	DICE MIC-RE	C Os
Τ1	MGBBN	45s
T2	LNASB	15s
TЗ	AAYZB	7s
(ELY) T4	KBANH	6s
REC L ME	EVEL NUA:MIC GA PIY RF(	

- ③ Push and hold [F-4 CLR] for 1 sec. to erase the contents.
- ④ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice memory mode.

#### Menu group selection Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic) Menu selection (Example: S) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Selection from: 5-1, 5-2 or 5-3



# Programming a memory name for transmit

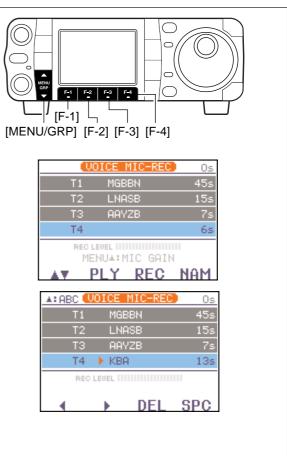
Memory channels can be tagged with alphanumeric names of up to 5 characters each.

Capital letters, small letters, numerals, some symbols  $(! \# \$ \% \& \ddagger ? " \land + - \bigstar / . , :; = < > () [] { } | _ - @)$  and space can be used. (See the step (5) below.)

- ① Record a message as described on the previous page.
- ② Call up the voice memory recording mode as described in steps ① to ③ (see the instructions for recording at previous page).
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select the desired voice memory.
- ④ Push [F-4 NAM] to enter memory name editing.
   A cursor appears and blinks.
  - •Memory channel names of no-recorded channels cannnot be selected.
- ⑤ Push [▲(MENU/GRP)] several times to select the desired character group.

•[ABC], [abc], [123] or [etc] indicates the capital letters, small letters, numerals or symbols, respectively

- (6) Input the desired character by rotating [DIAL].
  - •Push [F-1 4] or [F-2 ] for cursor movement.
  - Push [F-3 DEL] to delete the selected character.
  - Push [F-4 SPC] to input a space.
  - Pushing the HM-151's keypad, **[0]–[9]**, can also enter numerals.
- Push [V(MENU/GRP)] to input and set the name.
   The cursor disappears.
- (8) Repeat steps (3) to (6) to program another voice memory's name, if desired.
- Push [V(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice memory screen.



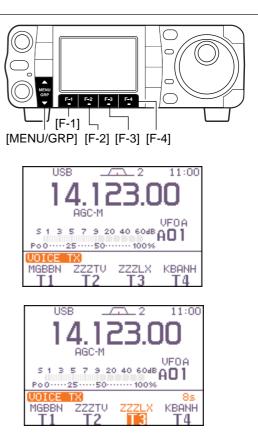
# Sending a recorded message

## ① Select 5-1.

- 2 Push [F-1 U0] to call up the voice recorder menu. · If the receive voice memory channels screen appears, push [▼(MENU/GRP)] then push [F-2 TX] to select the transmit voice memory channel.
  - · If the voice root menu appears, push [F-2 TX] to select the transmit voice memory menu. The voice recorder starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode.
- 3 Push [F-1 T1] [F-4 T4] to transmit the contents.
  - "T1"-- "T4" are highlighted while transmitting.
- 4 Push the selected memory channel key, [F-1 T1] - [F-4 T4], again to stop, if desired.
- 5 Push [V(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the voice memory screen.

## % For your information

- When an external keypad is connected to the pin 2 and pin 7 of the **[MIC]** connecter, the recorded message, T1–T4, can be transmitted without open-ing the voice recorder set screen. See page 135 for details.



## Transmit level setting

- (1) Call up the voice memory recording mode as described in steps ① to ② as above.
- (2) Push [**(**MENU/GRP)] to select the voice memory transmit level set mode.
- 3 Push the desired memory channel key, [F-1 T1]-[F-3 T3], momentarily to transmit the contents.
- ④ Rotate [DIAL] to adjust the transmit voice level. • Push [F-4 DEF] to select the default condition.
- 5 Push [**V**(MENU/GRP)] to return to the voice recorder screen.



Menu group selection Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: *M*, *S* or *G*(Graphic) Menu selection (Example: S) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Either Selection from: 5-1, 5-2 or 5-3  $\Delta$  or  $\nabla$ 

11:00

UFOR

SET

ON

OFF

DEF

USB

Po0-----25-----50-

Auto Monitor

MIC Memo

AGC-M

ТΧ

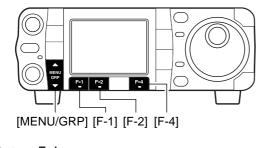
Ŧ

5 1 3 5 7 9 20 40 60dBAOI

100%

MIC

# Voice set mode



- (1) Select 5-1.
- ② Push [F-1 UI] then [▼(MENU/GRP)] to select the voice root menu.
  - ·If the voice root menu appears, skip the pushing [▼(MENU/GRP)]. The voice starting menu can be changed in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. (p. 134)
- ③ Push [F-4 5ET] to enter the voice recorder set mode.
- 4 Push [F-1 ] or [F-2 ] to select the desired item, then rotate [DIAL] to set the selected function ON and OFF.

· Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default condition.

(5) Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] to return to the voice root menu.

## ♦ Voice set mode

## 1 Auto Monitor

This item turns the auto monitor function ON and OFF. When this function is ON, the monitor function is automatically turned ON while transmitting a voice memorv message.

· Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default setting.

# 2. MIC Memo

This item selects the mic memo function ON and OFF. When this function is ON, and you speak into the microphone (without pushing [PTT]), your voice is mixed with the received audio and recorded.

This function is convienient when you want to record some information or comment while recording the received audio.

Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to return to default setting.

ON. OFF Automatic monitor function Automatic monitor function is ON. (default) is OFF.

OFF MIC memo function is ON.

ON.

MIC memo function is OFF. (default)

# **MEMORY OPERATION**

# Memory channels

The transceiver has 501 memory channels including 6 scan edge channels (3 pairs), and 2 call channels. In addition, a total of 5 memory banks (99 memory channel each), A to E, are available for usage by group, etc.

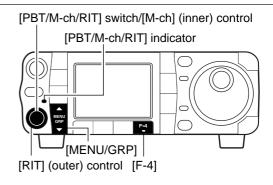
Memory mode is very useful for quickly changing to often-used frequencies.

All 503 memory/call channels are tuneable which means the programmed frequency can be tuned temporarily with **[DIAL]**, etc., in memory mode.

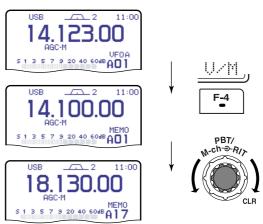
MEMORY CHANNEL	MEMORY CHANNEL NUMBER	CAPABILITY	TRANSFER TO VFO	OVER- WRITING	CLEAR
Regular (split memory)	1–99 (in each banks)	Independent transmit and receive frequencies and one mode in each memory channel. In addition, tone frequencies can also be stored for repeater use.	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan edges	1A–3B (common)	One frequency and one mode in each memory channel as scan edges for programmed scan.	Yes	Yes	No
Call channels (split memory)	C1, C2 (common)	Same as regular channels, but only frequencies in 144 MHz (C1), 430 MHz (C2) band can be programmed.		Yes	No

# Memory channel selection

- ① Push **[PBT/M-ch/RIT]** momentarily to select the Mch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
  - •[PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- ② Select M-2.
  - Push and hold [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. once or twice to select the menu group M.
  - Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily one or more times to select the menu M-2.
- ③ Push [F-4 U/M] to select memory mode.
- (4) Rotate [M-ch] (inner) control to select the desired memory channel.
  - All memory channels including blank channels can be selected.
  - Rotating [RIT] (outer) control changes the bank.
  - $\cdot$  [ $\blacktriangle$ ]/[ $\blacksquare$ ] on the microphone also change the channels.
- (5) To return to VFO mode, push [F-4  $\lor$ /M] again.



[EXAMPLE]: Selecting memory channel 17.



# Memory programming

Memory channel programming can be performed either in VFO mode or in memory mode.

#### ♦ Programming in VFO mode

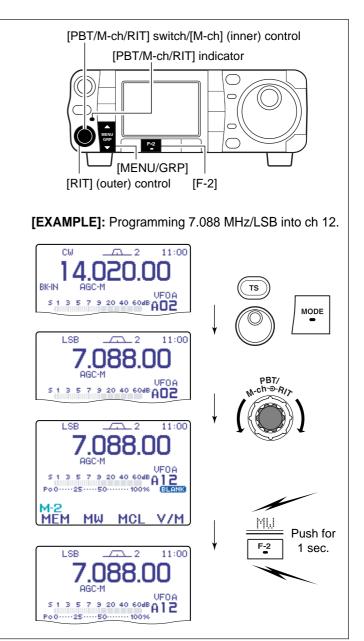
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the Mch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
   [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- ② Set the desired frequency and operating mode in VFO mode.
  - If you want to program the split frequency function, program both receive and transmit frequencies into VFO A and B, then turn ON the split function. (p. 89)
  - If you want to program a repeater function, set a tone frequency (p. 60) in addition to the receive/transmit frequencies.
- 3 Select M-2.
- ④ Push [F-1 MEM] to display the memory channel contents.
  - Memory channel contents appear above the multi-function key indicator.
  - •Push **[F-1 L5T]** to display the memory channel list. This is convenient for selecting the desired channel. Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** to exit the memory channel list.
- ⑤ Rotate [M-ch] to select the desired memory channel.
  - "ELARK" and "---,--" appear if the selected memory channel is a blank channel (and does not have contents).
  - Rotating [RIT] (outer) control changes the bank.
- 6 Push and hold **[F-2 Mul]** for 1 sec. to program the displayed frequency and operating mode into the selected memory channel.

To check the programmed contents, push **[F-4** U/M] to select memory mode.

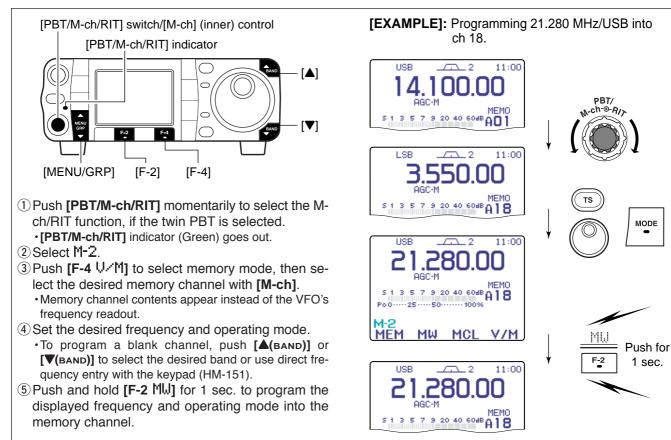
#### Menu group selection

Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic) Menu selection (Example: M) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Selection from: M-1, M-2 or M-3





#### Programming in memory mode



# Memory channel list

The memory channel list simultaneously shows 7 memory channels and their programmed contents.

You can select a desired memory channel from the memory channel list.

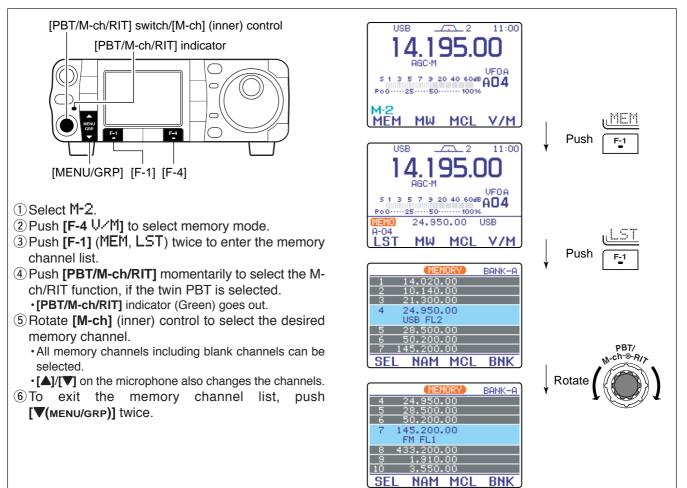
Menu group selection

Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic)

Menu selection (Example: M) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Selection from: 1/1, 1/2 or 1/-3



#### **Selecting a memory channel using the memory channel list**



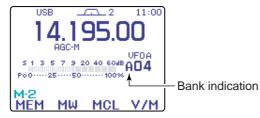
#### Setting a memory channel as a select memory

Select memory channels are used for select memory scan. Select memory scan repeatedly scans the select memory channels only. This is useful to speed up the memory scan interval. Of course, select memory channels are also scanned during normal memory scan.

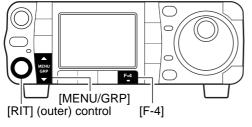
- ① Select the memory channel list as described at left.
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the M-ch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
   [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- ③ Rotate [M-ch] (inner) control to select the desired memory channel.
  - All memory channels including blank channels can be selected.
- [A]/[V] on the microphone also changes the channels.
- ④ Push [F-1 SEL] to set the memory channel as a select memory or not.
- (5) Repeat steps (3) to (4) to program another memory channel as a select memory channel, if desired.
- ⑥Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the memory channel list.
- Setting select memory channels is also possible in the memory scan indication. (p. 113)

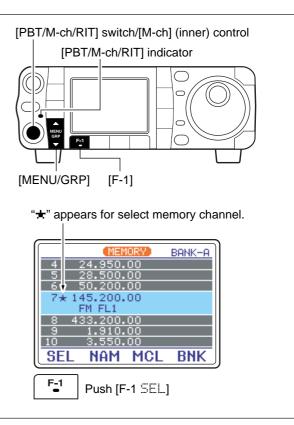
#### ♦ Selecting a memory bank

The IC-7000 has a total of 5 memory banks (99 memory channel each), A to E, available for usage by group, etc.



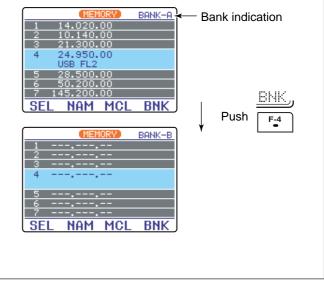
- ① Select the memory channel as described at p. 100.
- ② Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the Mch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
- •[PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out. ③ Rotate [RIT] (outer) control to select the desired
  - memory bank.





#### Memory channel list indication

- Select the memory channel list as described at left.
   Push [F-4 BNK] several times to select the desired memory bank.
  - Rotating [RIT] (outer) control also changes the bank.
- ③Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** twice to exit the memory channel list.



 Menu group selection

 Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec.

 Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic)

 Menu selection (Example: M)

 Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily.

 Selection from: M-1, M-2 or M-3



#### ♦ Memory names

All memory channels (including scan edges) can be tagged with alphanumeric names of up to 9 characters each.

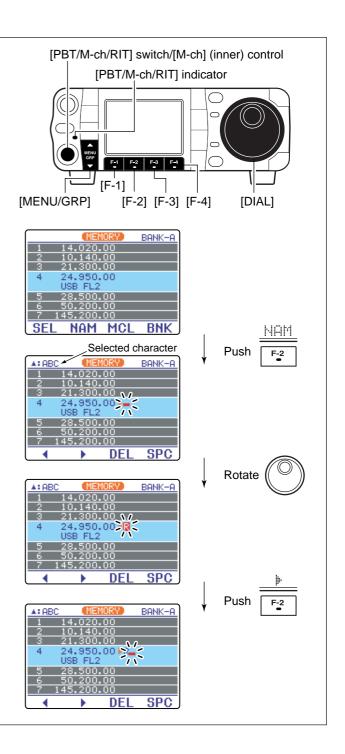
Capital letters, small letters, numerals, some symbols (! # \$ % & ? " ``^ + - \* / . , : ; = <> ( ) [] { } | \_ \_ \_ @) and spaces can be used.

#### • Editing (programming) memory names ① Select M-2.

- ② Push [F-4  $\bigcup$  M] to select memory mode.
- ③ Push [F-1] (MEM, LST) twice to enter the memory channel list.
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the M-ch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
   [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- (5) Rotate [M-ch] (inner) control to select the desired memory channel.
  - All memory channels including blank channels can be selected.

 $\cdot [\Delta]/[\nabla]$  on the microphone also changes the channels.

- 6 Push [F-2 NAM] to edit memory channel name.
  - A cursor appears and blinks.
  - •Memory channel names of blank channels cannot be edited.
- ⑦ Push [▲(MENU/GRP)] several times to select the desired character group.
  - [ABC], [abc], [123] or [etc] indicates the capital letters, small letters, numerals or symbols, respectively
- (8) Input the desired character by rotating [DIAL].
  - Push [F-1 4] or [F-2 ] for cursor movement.
     Push [F-3 DEL] to delete the selected character.
  - Push [F-4 SPC] to input a space.
  - Pushing the HM-151's keypad, [0]–[9], can also enter numerals.
- 9 Push [V(MENU/GRP)] to input and set the name.
   The cursor disappears.
- 1 Repeat steps 5 to 9 to program another memory channel's name, if desired.
- ①Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the memory channel list.



# Memory clearing

Any unnecessary memory channels can be cleared. The cleared memory channels become blank channels.

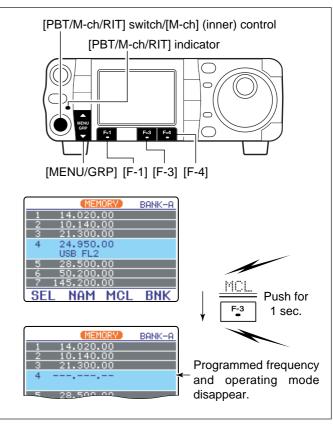
① Select M-2.

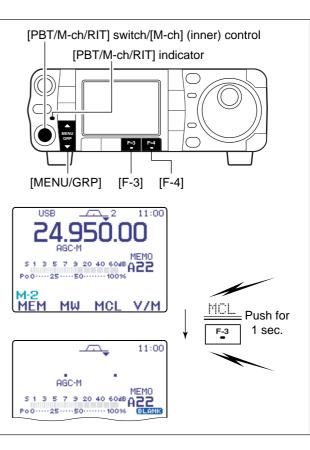
- ② Push [F-4 U/M] momentarily to select the memory mode.
- ③ Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the M-ch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
   [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- ④ Rotate [M-ch] to select the memory channel to be cleared.
- ⑤ Push and hold [F-3 MCL] for 1 sec. to clear the contents.
  - •The programmed frequency and operating mode disappear and "IELANK" appears.
- 6 To return to VFO mode, push [F-4 U/M] again.



#### ① Select M-2.

- ② Push [F-4 U/M] to select memory mode.
- ③ Push [F-1] (MEM, LST) twice to enter the memory channel list.
- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the M-ch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
   [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- (5) Rotate [M-ch] to select the memory channel to be cleared (blanked).
- 6 Push and hold [F-3 MCL] for 1 sec. to clear the contents.
- ⑦ Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** twice to exit the memory channel list.





# Frequency transferring

The frequency and operating mode in a memory channel can be transferred to the VFO.

Frequency transferring can be performed in either VFO mode or memory mode.

#### Menu group selection

Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: M, 5 or G(Graphic)

Menu selection (Example: M) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Selection from: 1/1, 1/2 or 1/-3



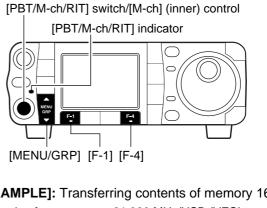
#### ♦ Transferring in VFO mode

This is useful for transferring programmed contents to VFO.

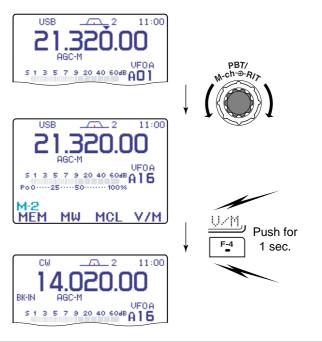
- 1) Select M-2.
- ②Push [F-4 U/M] momentarily to select the VFO mode.
- ③Push [F-1 MEM] to display the memory channel contents.

• Memory channel contents appear above the multi-function key indicator.

- Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the M-ch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
   [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- 5 Select a memory channel with **[M-ch]**.
  - "ELANK" appears if the selected memory channel is a blank channel (and does not have contents). In this case transferring is not possible.
- ⑥ Push and hold [F-4 以/竹] for 1 sec. to transfer the frequency and operating mode.
  - Transferred frequency and operating mode appear in the display.



[EXAMPLE]: Transferring contents of memory 16. Operating frequency : 21.320 MHz/USB (VFO) Contents of memory 16 : 14.020 MHz/CW



#### ♦ Transferring in memory mode

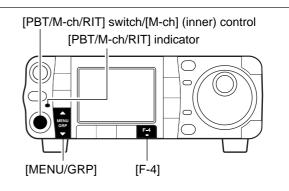
This is useful for transferring frequency and operating mode while operating in memory mode.

When you have changed the frequency or operating mode in the selected memory channel.
Displayed frequency and mode are transferred.
Programmed frequency and mode in the memory channel are not transferred, and they remain in the memory channel.

- (1) Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the Mch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected.
  - ·[PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
- 2 Select M-2.
- ③ Push [F-4 U/M] momentarily to select the memory mode.
- 4 Rotate [M-ch] to select the memory channel to be transferred.

• "BLANK" appears if the selected memory channel is a blank channel (and does not have contents). In this case transferring is not possible.

- 5 Push and hold [F-4 U/M] for 1 sec. to transfer the frequency and operating mode.
  - ·Displayed frequency and operating mode are transferred to the VFO.
- 6 Push [F-4 U/M] momentarily to select the VFO mode.



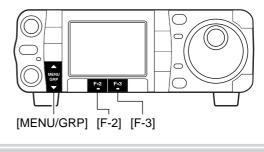
# ■ Memo pads

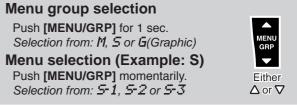
The transceiver has a memo pad function to store frequency and operating mode for easy write and recall. The memo pads are separate from memory channels.

The default number of memo pads is 5, however, this can be increased to 10 in the miscellaneous (others) set mode if desired (p. 132).

Memo pads are convenient when you want to memorize a frequency and operating mode temporarily, such as when you find a DX station in a pile-up or when a station is busy for a long time and you want to temporarily search for other stations.

Use the transceiver's memo pads instead of relying on hastily scribbled notes that are easily misplaced.





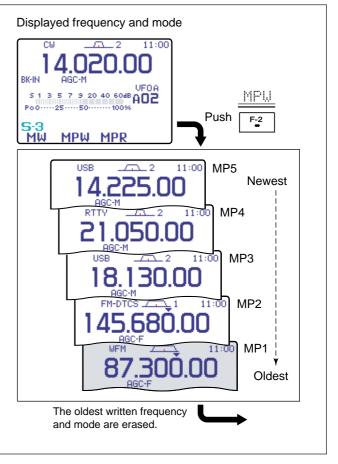
#### Writing frequencies and operating modes into memo pads

①Select S-3.

②Push [F-2 MPW] to program the frequency into a memo pad.

When you write a 6th frequency and operating mode, the oldest written frequency and operating mode are automatically erased to make room for the new settings.

**NOTE:** Each memo pad must have its own unique combination of frequency and operating mode; memo pads having identical settings cannot be written.



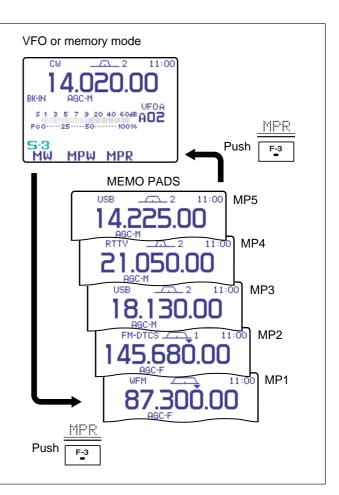
#### ♦ Calling up a frequency from a memo pad

You can call up the desired frequency and operating mode of a memo pad by pushing [F-3 MPR] in the S-3 menu.

- •Make sure 5-3 is selected in advance.
- •Both VFO and memory modes can be used.
- The frequency and operating mode are called up, starting from the most recently written.

When you call up a frequency and an operating mode from memo pads with **[F-3 MPR]**, the previously displayed frequency and operating mode are automatically stored in a temporary pad. The frequency and operating mode in the temporary pad can be recalled by pushing **[F-3 MPR]** one or more times.

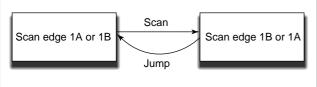
**NOTE:** If you change the frequency or operating mode called up from a memo pad, the frequency and operating mode in the temporary pad are erased.



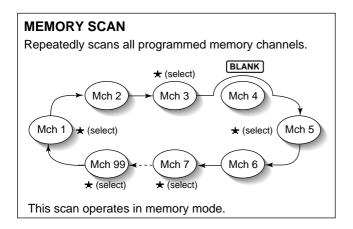
# Scan types

#### PROGRAMMED SCAN

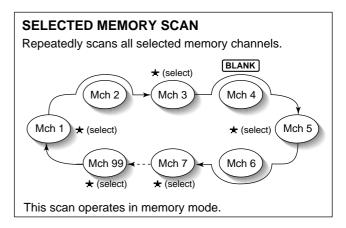
Repeatedly scans between two scan edge frequencies (scan edge memory channels 1A and 1B).



This scan operates in VFO mode.



# PRIORITY WATCH Checks for signals on a memory while operating on a VFO frequency.



# ■ Preparation

#### •Channels

For programmed scan: Program scan edge frequencies into scan edge memory channels 1A and 1B. (p. 101)

For memory scan: Program two or more memory channels except scan edge memory channels.

For memory select scan: Designate two or more memory channels as select memory channels—select a memory channel, then push [F-2 SEL] in the S-2 menu (memory mode) to designate the channel as a select memory channel.

*For priority watch:* Program one memory channel to be watched.

#### •Scan resume ON/OFF

You can select the scan to resume or cancel when detecting a signal, in the miscellaneous (others) set mode, item "SCAN Resume." Scan resume ON/OFF must be set before operating a scan. See p. 132 for ON/OFF setting and scan resume condition details.

#### Scan speed

Scan speed can be selected from 2 levels, high or low, in the miscellaneous (others) set mode. See p. 132 for details.

#### Squelch condition

SCAN STARTS WITH	PROGRAMMED SCAN	MEMORY SCANS PRIORITY WATCH
SQUELCH	The scan continues until it is stopped man- ually, and does not pause even if it de- tects signals.	Scan pauses on each channel when the scan resume is ON; not applicable when OFF.
OPEN	This is not applicable when the scan re- sume is OFF and a programmable step (more than 1 kHz) is selected.	
	Scan stops when detecting a signal.	
SQUELCH CLOSED		

C

C

11:00

UFOA

VSC

Select

VFO mode

[MENU/GRP] [F-1] [F-3]

5 1 3 5 7 9 20 40 60dBAD1

AGC-M

Po0-----25-----50------ 100%

PRI

LISB

s SCN

F-1

<u>~</u>2

V/M

then push [F-1 SCN]

[RF/SQL]

#### Menu group selection Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: *M*, *S* or *G*(Graphic) Menu selection (Example: M) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Either Selection from: $5 \cdot 1$ , $5 \cdot 2$ or $5 \cdot 3$ $\Delta$ or $\nabla$

# Programmed scan operation

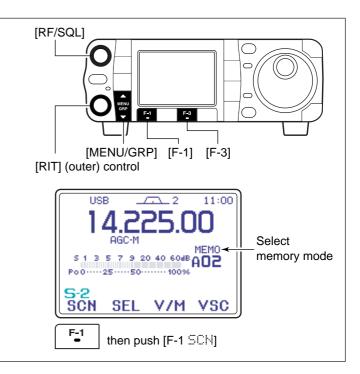
- 1)Select S-2.
- 2 Push [F-3 U/M] to select VFO mode.
- 3 Select the desired operating mode.
  - · The operating mode can also be changed while scanning.
- 4 Set [RF/SQL] open or closed.
  - · See page at left for squelch condition.
    - · If the [RF/SQL] control function is set as "AUTO," the squelch is always open in SSB, CW and RTTY modes. See pgs. 1, 35, 129 for details.
- 5 Push [F-1 SCN] to start the scan. · Decimal point blinks while scanning.
- 6 When the scan detects a signal, the scan turns OFF, pauses or ignores it depending on the resume setting and the squelch condition.
- To cancel the scan push [F-1 SCN].

**NOTE:** If the same frequencies are programmed into both scan edge memory channels 1A and 1B, programmed scan does not start.



- ①Select the desired memory bank, if necessary.
  - Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT] momentarily to select the M-ch/RIT function, if the twin PBT is selected. • [PBT/M-ch/RIT] indicator (Green) goes out.
  - Rotate [RIT] (outer) control to select the desired memory bank.
- (2) Select 5-2.
- ③ Push [F-3 U/M] to select memory mode.
- (4) Close the squelch with [RF/SQL].
- (5) Push [F-1 SCN] to start the scan. · Decimal point blinks while scanning.
- 6 When the scan detects a signal, the scan stops or pauses depending on the resume setting.
- To cancel the scan push [F-1 SCN].

**NOTE:** Two or more memory channels must be programmed for memory scan to start.





#### Menu group selection

Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: *M*, *S* or *G*(Graphic) Menu selection (Example: M)

Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Selection from: 5-1, 5-2 or 5-3



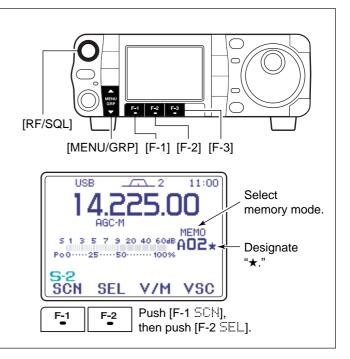
# Select memory scan operation

#### 1) Select 5-2.

- 2 Push [F-3 U/M] to select memory mode.
- 3 Close the squelch with [RF/SQL].
- 4 Push [F-1 SCN] to start the memory scan. · Decimal point blinks while scanning.
- 5 Push [F-2 SEL] to change the memory scan to select memory scan.
- 6 When the scan detects a signal, the scan stops or pauses depending on the resume setting.
- (7) To cancel the scan push [F-1 SCN].

**NOTE:** Two or more memory channels must be designated as select memory channels for select memory scan to start (see p. 104).

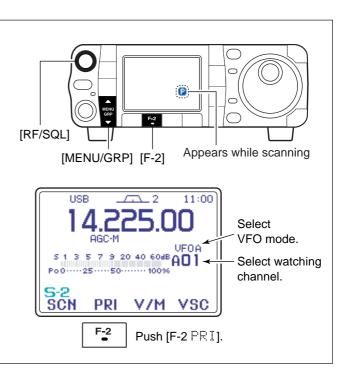
While scan function is not active, pushing **[F-2 SEL]** sets the select memory channels ON or OFF. And pushing and holding **[F-2 SEL]** for 2 sec. clears the all select memory channels.



# Priority watch

- ①Select VFO mode, then set a frequency.
- 2 Close the squelch with [RF/SQL].
- 3 Set the desired memory channel as the channel to be watched.
- (4) Select S-2.
- (5) Push [F-2 PRI] to start the priority watch.
  - "" appears and decimal points blink while watching VFO, and then "F" and decimal points blink while watching a memory channel.
- 6 When the scan detects a signal, the scan pauses for 10 sec. or until the signal disappears, depending on the resume setting.
- To cancel the scan push [F-2 PRI].

**NOTE:** The paused condition when detecting a signal differs depending on the scan resume condi-tion. (p. 132) resume on: pauses for 10 sec. resume off: pauses until the signal disappears.



# ANTENNA TUNER OPERATION

# Optional AT-180 AUTOMATIC ANTENNA TUNER operation

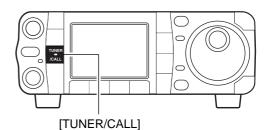
The AT-180 automatic antenna tuner matches the IC-7000 to the connected antenna automatically. Once the tuner matches an antenna, the variable capacitor setting are memorized as a preset point for each frequency range (100 kHz steps). Therefore, when you change the frequency range, the variable capacitors are automatically preset to the memorized point.

- NOTE:
  The AT-180 can match both HF and 50 MHz bands. However, operation is different for the HF and 50 MHz bands.
  When connecting the AT-180, the IC-7000's output power must be set over the 10 W. Otherwise, the AT-180 movement be set over the 10 W. Otherwise, the AT-180 movement be set over the 10 W.

- AT-180 may not be tuned correctly. (AT-180's min-
- imum operating input power is 8 W.)

CAUTION: NEVER transmit with the tuner ON when no antenna is connected. This will damage both the transceiver and antenna tuner.

The AT-180 cannot be used for the 144/430 MHz bands. When operating on the 144/430 MHz band, pushing [TUNER/CALL] selects the call channel (p. 100).



#### ♦ Tuner operation

#### •For the HF band:

Push [TUNER/CALL] to turn the tuner ON. The antenna is tuned automatically during transmission when the antenna SWR is higher than 1.5:1. • When the tuner is ON, "TUNE" indication appears.

#### • For the 50 MHz band:

Push and hold [TUNER/CALL] for 1 sec. to tune the antenna. If "TUNE" indicator blinks slowly while transmitting, push and hold [TUNER/CALL] for 1 sec. again to re-tune the antenna.

#### ♦ Manual tuning

During SSB operation on HF bands at low voice levels, the AT-180 may not be tuned correctly. In such cases, manual tuning is helpful.

Push [TUNER/CALL] for 2 sec. to start manual tuning.

•CW mode is selected, a side tone is emitted, and "TUNE" indicator blinks; then, the previous mode is selected.

If the tuner cannot reduce the SWR to less than 1.5:1 after 20 sec. of tuning, "IIIIII" indicator disappears. In this case, check the following:

the antenna connection and feedline

• the antenna SWR (p. 36; meter function)

#### Through inhibit (HF bands only)

The AT-180 has a through inhibit condition. When selecting this condition, the tuner can be used at poor SWR's. In this case, automatic tuning in the HF bands activates only when exceeding SWR 3:1. Therefore, manual tuning is necessary each time you change the frequency. Although termed "through inhibit," the tuner will be set to the "through" configuration if the SWR is higher than 3:1 after tuning.

#### CONVENIENT

 Tuner sensitive condition (HF bands only) If you require critical tuning at any time during transmission, select the tuner sensitive condition. See p. 131 for selection.

 Automatic tuner start (HF bands only) If you want to turn OFF the tuner under conditions of VSWR 1.5:1 or less, use "automatic tuner on" and turn the tuner OFF. See p. 130 for turning the function ON and OFF.

#### Menu group selection

Push [MENU/GRP] for 1 sec. Selection from: M, S or G(Graphic)

Menu selection (Example: M) Push [MENU/GRP] momentarily. Selection from: 5-1, 5-2 or 5-3



# ■ Optional AH-4 AUTOMATIC ANTENNA TUNER operation

The AH-4 matches the IC-7000 to a long wire antenna more than 7 m/23 ft long (3.5 MHz and above). • See p. 20 for connection.

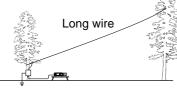
• See the AH-4 instruction manual for AH-4 installation and antenna connection details.

#### AH-4 setting example:

For mobile operation

 Optional AH-2b antenna element





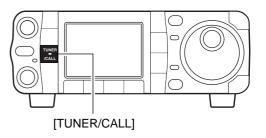
#### **△DANGER!: HIGH VOLTAGE!**

**NEVER** touch the antenna element while tuning or transmitting.

**NEVER** operate the AH-4 without an antenna wire. The tuner and transceiver will be damaged.

**NEVER** operate the AH-4 when it is ungrounded.

Transmitting before tuning may damage the transceiver. Note that the AH-4 cannot tune when using a  $1\!\!\!/_2 \lambda$  long wire or on a multiple of that frequency.



#### ♦ AH-4 operation

Tuning is required for each frequency. **Be sure** to retune the antenna before transmitting when you change the frequency—even slightly.

- ①Set the desired frequency in an HF band.
  - The AH-4 will not operate on frequencies outside of ham bands.
- ② Push and hold [TUNER/CALL] for 1 sec.
   "(TURE)" indicator and "CW" appears while tuning.
- ③ "TUNE" indicator stays ON when tuning is complete.
  - When the connected wire cannot be tuned, "**TURE**" indicator blinks, and the AH-4 is bypassed and the antenna wire is connected to the antenna connector on the transceiver directly.
- ④ To bypass the AH-4 manually, push [TUNER/ CALL].

#### CONVENIENT

#### •PTT tune function

The AH-4 is always tuned when the PTT is pushed after the frequency is changed (more than 1%). This function removes the "push and hold **[TUNER/CALL]**" operation and activates first transmission on the new frequency. This function is turned ON in the miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 131).

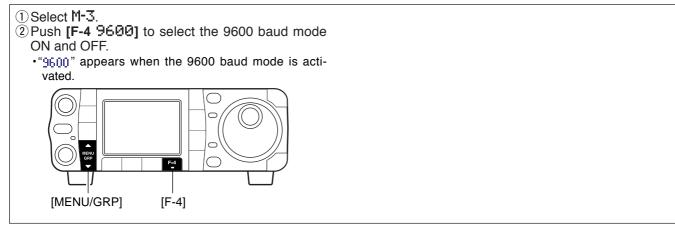
PACKET OPERATION 1

# Packet operation

#### ♦ Data socket

	PIN #/NAME	DESCRIPTION
	1 DATA IN	Communication data input.
	② GND	Ground for DATA IN, DATA OUT and AF OUT.
	3 PTTP	Transmits when grounded. When grounded, microphone input (pin 6) of [MIC] connector will be disconnected.
nel view	(4) DATA OUT	Outputs 9600 bps receive data.
	5 AF OUT	Outputs 1200 bps receive data.
	6 SQL	Squelch output. Goes to ground when squelch opens.

#### Adjusting the data speed



#### Adjusting the transmit signal output from the TNC

When setting data transmission speed to 9600 baud bps, the data signal coming from the TNC is applied exclusively to the internal limiter circuitry to automatically maintain bandwidth.

**NEVER** apply data levels from the TNC of over 0.6 Vp-p, otherwise the transceiver will not be able to maintain the band width and may possibly interfere with other stations.

**NOTE:** Read the instructions supplied with your TNC carefully before attempting packet operation with the IC-7000.

1. When using a level meter or oscilloscope, adjust the TX audio level (DATA IN level) from the TNC as follows.

0.4 Vp-p (0.2 Vrms): recommended level 0.2–0.5 Vp-p (0.1–0.25 Vrms): acceptable level

- 2. When not using a measuring device.
- 1 Connect the IC-7000 to a TNC.
- ② Enter a test mode ("CAL", etc.) on the TNC, then transmit some test data.
- ③ When the transceiver fails to transmit test data or transmits sporadically (**[TX]** indicator doesn't light red or blinks):
  - Decrease the TNC output level until **[TX]** indicator lights red continuously.

When transmission is not successful even though **[TX]** indicator lights red continuously:

- Increase the TNC output level.

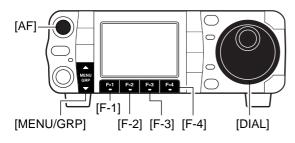
10 11

# 12 CLOCK AND TIMERS

# ■Time set mode

This transceiver has a built-in 24-hour clock with power-off timer function. The clock indication is always displayed except after pushing **[F-INP/ENT]** (HM-151).

#### •Set mode operation



- Push [AF(seт)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- ② Push [F-3 TIME] to enter the time set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select the desired item.
- ④ Rotate **[DIAL]** to set or select the desired value or condition.
  - Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default value or condition.
- (5) Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the set mode.

1 Year

This item sets the current year.

2005

Rotate [DIAL], then push [F-3 SET] to set the year.

#### 2 Date

This item sets the current date.

3-15(Tue)

Rotate [DIAL], then push [F-3 SET] to set the date.

#### 3 Time (Now)

This item sets the current time for the built-in 24-hour clock.

15:00

Rotate [DIAL], then push [F-3 SET] to set the time.

The clock 2 is displayed in- The clock 2 does not dis-

stead of the 1st clock indica- play. (default)

OFF

#### 4 CLOCK2 Function

This item turns the second clock indication ON and OFF instead of 1st clock. The clock 2 is convenient to indicate the UTC and

other country's local time, etc. • Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to set the default value.

## 5 CLOCK2 Offset

This item sets the desired off-set time period for the clock 2 indication within -24:00 to +24:00 in 5 min. steps.

Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to set the default value.

#### 6 Auto Power OFF

This item sets the power-off period for automatic shutdown after the power-on timer has turned power ON. ± 0:00 (default)

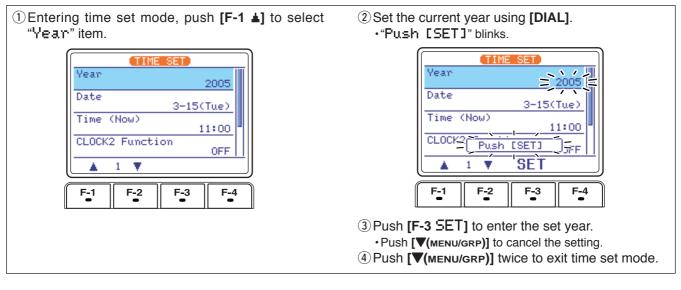
ON.

tion.

+ 9:00 Rotate [DIAL] to set the time.

60min Push [F-3 SET] to enter the time.

#### ♦ Setting the current year



#### $\diamond$ Setting the current date

① Entering time set mode, push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to	TIME SET
select "Date" item.	Year
2 Rotate [DIAL] to set the current date.	2005
• "Push [SET]" blinks.	Date 3-15(Tue)
③ Push [F-3 5ET] to enter the set date.	Time (Now)
<ul> <li>Push [</li></ul>	11:00
④ Push <b>[▼(мемu/grp)]</b> twice to exit time set mode.	CLOCK2 Function OFF
	▲ 2 ▼
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

#### $\diamond$ Setting the current time

② Rotate [DIAL] to set the current time.       2005         • "Push [SET]" blinks.       3-15(Tue)         ③ Push [F-3 SET] to enter the set time.       9-15(Tue)         • Push [V(MENU/GRP)] to cancel the setting.       11:00         ④ Push [V(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit time set mode.       0FF	<ul> <li>• "Push [SET]" blinks.</li> <li>③ Push [F-3 SET] to enter the set time.</li> <li>• Push [▼(мели/grP)] to cancel the setting.</li> </ul>	Date 3-15(Tue) Time (Now) 11:00 CLOCK2 Function
--	--	---

#### ♦ Clock2 function activity

- ① Entering time set mode, push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "CLOCK2 Function" item.
- Select the CLOCK2 function activity using [DIAL].
- ③ Push [▼(меми/grp)] twice to exit time set mode.

ate <u>2-21(Mon)</u> ime (Now) <u>17:04</u> CLOCK2 Function <u>OFF</u>
ime (Now) 17:04 CLOCK2 Function
17:04 CLOCK2 Function OFF
LOCK2 Function OFF
OFF
1 OCK2 OKK+
LUCKZ UTISEC [
± 0:00
▲ 4 ▼ DEF

#### ♦ Clock2 offset setting

- ① Entering time set mode, push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 ▼] to select "CLOCK2 Offset" item.
- ② Rotate [DIAL] to set the offset time within -24:00 to +24:00 in 5 min. steps.
- ③ Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit time set mode.

TIME SE	
Time (Now)	
	17:04
CLOCK2 Function	
	OFF
CLOCK2 Offset	
	± 0:00
Auto Power OFF	
	OFF
A 5 Y	DEE

#### ♦ Auto power OFF activity

The transceiver can be set to automatically turn OFF after a specified period is with beep when no operation is performed. The power-off period can be set to 30–120 min. in 30 min. steps.

- ①Entering time set mode, push [F-2 ♥] to select "Auto Power OFF" item.
- ② Set the desired power-off time using [DIAL]. "Push [SET]" blinks.
- ③ Push [F-3 SET] to enter the set time.
- Push [**V**(мели/grp)] to cancel the setting.
- ④ Push **[▼(MENU/GRP)]** twice to exit timer set mode.

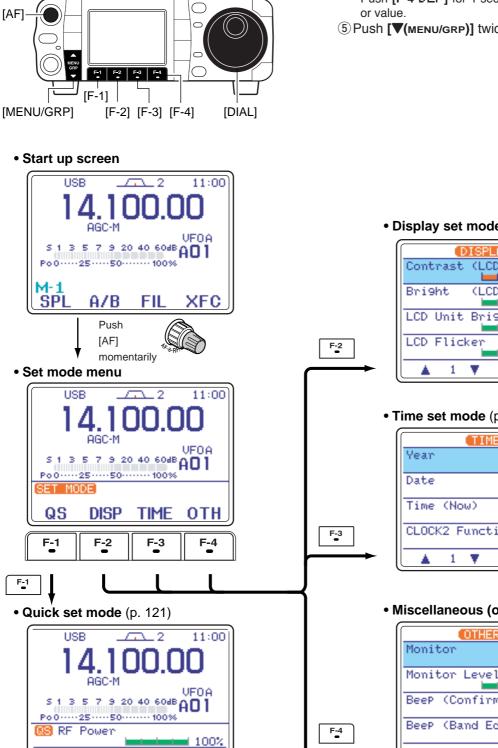
TIME SET		
Time (Now)	17:05	
CLOCK2 Function	OFF	
CLOCK2 Offset	± 0:00	
Auto Power OFF	OFF	
▲ 6 ▼	DEF	

# SET MODE 13

# Set mode description

Set mode is used for programming infrequently changed values or conditions of functions. This transceiver has a quick set mode, display set mode, timer set mode and miscellaneous (others) set mode.

#### Set mode operation



DEF

1 T

- (1) Push [AF(set)] momentarily to enter the set mode menu.
- 2 Push [F-1 QS], [F-2 DISP], [F-3 TIME] or [F-4 **OTH**] to enter the desired set mode.
- ③ Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] to select the desired item.
- 4 Set the desired condition using [DIAL].
- Push [F-4 DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default condition
- (5) Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the set mode.

• Display set mode (p. 124)

(LCD) 40% (LCD) 70% LCD Unit Bright 40% 65% DEF

• Time set mode (p. 117)



• Miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 128)



# ■ Quick set mode

Mode	Set mode item	Default setting
	1 RF Power	100%
	2 MIC Gain	50%
	3 SSB TBW (WIDE) L	100 [Hz]
SSB	4 SSB TBW (WIDE) H	2900 [Hz]
	5 SSB TBW (MID) L	300 [Hz]
	6 SSB TBW (MID) H	2700 [Hz]
	7 SSB TBW (NAR) L	500 [Hz]
	8 SSB TBW (NAR) H	2500 [Hz]
CW	1 RF Power	100%
	2 Key SPeed	20WPM
	3 CW Pitch	600 [Hz]
	4 Side Tone Level	50%
	5 Side Tone Level Limit	ON
	1 RF Power	100%
	2 Twin Peak Filter	OFF
RTTY	3 RTTY Mark Frequency	2125 [Hz]
	4 RTTY Shift Width	170 [Hz]
	5 RTTY Keyin9 Polarity	Normal
AM	1 RF Power	100%
FM/WFM	2 MIC Gain	50%

#### RF Power (all modes)

This item adjusts the RF output power. The RF output power can be adjusted from 0 to 100% in 1 % steps.

#### MIC Gain (SSB/AM/FM modes)

This item adjusts microphone gain from 0 to 100% in 1% steps.

# SSB TBW (WIDE) L (SSB mode)

These items set the transmission passband width for the wide setting by selecting the lower and higher frequencies.

Lower freq. : 100 (default), 200, 300 and 500  $\mbox{Hz}$ 

LLLL 100%

100% (default)

50% (default)

**100** 100 Hz (default)

#### Quick set mode (continued)

# SSB TBW (WIDE) H (SSB mode) 2900 These items set the transmission passband width for 2900 Hz (default) quencies. 2900 Hz (default) Higher freq.: 2500, 2700, 2800 and 2900 Hz (default) 2900 Hz (default) SSB TBW (MID) L (SSB mode) 300 These items set the transmission passband width for 300 the middle setting by selecting the lower and higher 300 Hz (default) Lower freq.: 100, 200, 300 (default) and 500 Hz 300 Hz (default)

#### SSB TBW (MID) H (SSB mode)

These items set the transmission passband width for the middle setting by selecting the lower and higher frequencies. Higher freq.: 2500, 2700 (default) 2800 and 2900 Hz

#### SSB TBW (NAR) L (SSB mode)

These items set the transmission passband width for the narrow setting by selecting the lower and higher frequencies.

Lower freq. : 100, 200, 300 and 500 Hz (default)

#### SSB TBW (NAR) H (SSB mode)

These items set the transmission passband width for the narrow setting by selecting the lower and higher frequencies.

Lower freq. : 2500 (default), 2700, 2800 and 2900 Hz

## Кеч Speed (CW mode)

This item adjusts the CW key speed. The key speed can be selected from 6 to 60 wpm.

#### CW Pitch (CW mode)

This item adjusts the CW  $\,$  receive pitch. The pitch can be selected from 300 to 900 Hz in 5 Hz steps.

600 600 Hz (default)

20WPM

20 WPM (default)

500 500 Hz (default)

2700

2700 Hz (default)

2500 2500 Hz (default)

13

# 13 SET MODE

Quick set mode (continued)

<b>Side Tone Level (CW mode)</b> This item adjusts the CW side tone level from 0% to 100% in 1% steps. See p. 43 for details.	<b>لینے 50% (</b> default)		
Side Tone Level Limit (CW mode) This item allows you to set a maximum volume level for CW side tones. CW side tones are linked to the [AF] control until a specified volume level is reached — further rotation of the [AF] control will not increase the volume of the CW side tones.	<b>DN</b> CW side tone level is limited with <b>[AF]</b> (default)	<b>DFF</b> CW side tone level is linked to <b>[AF]</b>	
Twin Peak Filter (RTTY mode) This item turns the twin peak filter ON and OFF.	ŪN Twin peak filter is ON	<b>DFF</b> Twin peak filter is OFF. (default)	
RTTY Mark Frequency (RTTY mode) This item selects the RTTY mark frequency. RTTY mark frequency is switched between 1275, 1615 and 2125 Hz.	2125 2125 Hz RTTY mark frequency (default)	1275 1275 Hz RTTY mark frequency	
RTTY Shift Width (RTTY mode) This item adjusts the RTTY shift width. There are 3 selectable values: 170, 200 and 425 Hz.	<b>170</b> 170 Hz RTTY shift frequency (default)	425 425 Hz RTTY shift frequency	
RTTY Key in 9 Polarity (RTTY mode) This item selects the RTTY keying polarity. Normal or reverse keying polarity can be selected. When reverse polarity is selected, Mark and Space are reversed. - Normal : Key open/close = Mark/Space - Reverse : Key open/close = Space/Mark	Norma 1 Normal polarity (default)	Revense Reverse polarity	

# Display set mode

To adjust the LCD contrast or backlight, wait until the LCD becomes stable (10 min. or more after turn-ing power ON). This is an inherent characteristic of LCDs and LCD backlights and does not indicate a transceiver malfunction.

#### 1 Contrast (LCD)

This item adjusts the contrast of the LCD from 0% to 100% in 1% steps.

#### 2Bright (LCD)

This item adjusts the brightness of the LCD from 0% to 100% in 1% steps.

#### 3LCD Unit Bright

This item adjusts the brightness of the LCD unit from 0% to 100% in 1% steps.

4 LCD Flicker

This item adjusts the flicker of the LCD from 0% to 100% in 1% steps.

Icom recommends using the default value. But if you find the LCD flicker objectionable, adjust this item.

#### 5 Backli9ht(Switches)

This item adjusts the brightness of the switches from 0% to 100% in 1% steps.

#### 6DisPlay Type

This item sets the LCD screen type. There are 3 selectable types: A (Black-background), B (White-background), and C (Blue-background).

A A-type LCD screen (default)

**60%** 

50% (default)

40% (default)

<u>⊨⊨</u>⊥⊥ 65% 65% (default)

13

**⊨⊨**⊥⊥⊥ 40% 40% (default)

**10**%

70% (default)

**60%** 

# 13 SET MODE

7DisPlay Font Type		
This item sets the font type of the frequency readouts. Basic and Italic (2 fonts) are selectable.	Basi⊂ Basic font (default)	
8DisPlay Font Size		
This item sets the font size of the frequency readouts. Normal and large (2 sizes) are selectable.	Norma l Normal size (default)	
9 Meter Peak Hold		
This item turns the meter peak hold function ON and OFF. When the meter peak hold function is ON, the highest activated segment of the meter remains visible for 0.5 sec.; when OFF, the meter functions normally.	<b>ŪN</b> Meter peak hold is ON (default)	<b>OFF</b> Meter peak hold is OFF
10 Filter Popup (PBT)		
This item turns the popup indication ON and OFF for the PBT function.	<b>ŪN</b> Popup function is ON (default)	<b>OFF</b> Popup function is OFF
11 Filter Popup (FIL)		
This item turns the popup indication ON and OFF for the filter selection.	<b>ŪN</b> Popup function is ON (default)	<b>DFF</b> Popup function is OFF
12 1Hz Mode Popup		
This item turns the popup indication ON and OFF for the 1 Hz tuning step function.	미시 Popup function is ON (default)	<b>OFF</b> Popup function is OFF
13 Scope CENTER/FIX Popup		
This item turns the popup indication ON and OFF for the Scope center/fix mode selection.	ŪN Popup function is ON (default)	<b>OFF</b> Popup function is OFF

#### 14 TV POPUP (CH UP/Down) This item turns the popup indication ON and OFF for OFF ON. the TV channel Up/Down operation. Popup function is ON Popup function is OFF TV operation is available for Japanese version only. (default) 15 TU POPUP (P. AMP/ATT) This item turns the popup indication ON and OFF for OFF ON. the P.AMP/ATT setting on TV operation. Popup function is ON Popup function is OFF TV operation is available for Japanese version only. (default) 16 Voice TX Name Display This item turns the indication of the voice TX memory OFF 0N channel names ON and OFF on the voice TX mem-Only the voice TX memory Voice TX memory names ory channels of the voice TX menu. are indicated on the voice channels are indicated. TX memory channels. (default) 17 Keyer Memory DisPlay This item turns the indication of the keyer memory **OFF** 0N contents ON and OFF on the keyer memory channels Memory contents are indi- Only the keyer memory of the memory keyer send menu. cated on the keyer memory channels are indicated. channels. (default) 18 DTMF Memory DisPlay This item turns the indication of the DTMF code se-OFF 0N guence ON and OFF on the DTMF memory channels DTMF code sequence are Only DTMF memory chanof the DTMF send menu. indicated on the DTMF nels are indicated. memory channels. (default) 19 External DisPlay This item selects the indication size for external dis-2 1 play. Same indication ratio as The indication width betransceiver display. comes narrow. (default) 20 OPenin9 Messa9e This item turns the opening message screen indica-OFF 0N tion capability ON and OFF. Opening message is ON Opening message is OFF

(default)

Display set mode (continued)

3

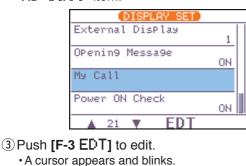
#### Display set mode (continued)

#### 21 My Call

Your call sign, etc. can be displayed in the opening screen when turning power ON. Up to 10 characters can be programmed.

Capital letters, numerals, some symbols (– /  $\cdot$  ) and space can be used.

- (1) Push [AF(SET)] momentarily, then [F-2 DISP] to select the display set mode.
- ② Push [F-1 ▲] or [F-2 T] several times to select the "My Call" item.



#### Selected 10 A: ABC DISPLAY SET character External DisPlay 1 Opening Message 0N My Call N/\_ Power ON Check 0N DEL SPC 4 • F-1 F-2 F-3 F-4

- ④ Input the desired character by rotating **[DIAL]** or by pushing the band key (on HM-151) for number input.
  - •Push [**(MENU/GRP**)] to select the capital letters ([**ABC**]), numerals ([**123**]) or symbols ([**etc**]).
  - Push [F-1 4] or [F-2 ] for cursor movement.
  - Push [F-3 DEL] to delete the selected character.
  - Push [F-4 SPC] to input a space.
- Dush [V(MENU/GRP)] to input the set name.
   The cursor disappears.
- ⑥Push [▼(MENU/GRP)] twice to exit the set mode screen.

#### •Opening screen example



#### 22 Power ON Check

This item selects the indication ON or OFF when turning power ON.

- ON : The Transceiver briefly displays 'Your Call sign,' 'RF power,' 'Auto power OFF timer' and 'RIT/⊿TX frequency' when turning power ON. •No-programmed or disactivated items are skipped.
- OFF : The display goes directly to frequency indication at power ON.

#### ON

Power ON check is ON. (default)

#### OFF

Power ON check is OFF.

# Miscellaneous (others) set mode

beep tones are linked to the [AF] control until a spec-

ified volume level is reached — further rotation of the **[AF]** control will not increase the volume of the beep

tones.

1 Monitor		
This item sets the TX monitor function ON and OFF.	ON	OFF
The monitor gain can be set described below.	TX monitor function is turned ON.	TX monitor function is turned OFF. (default)
2 Monitor Level		
This item adjusts the transmit IF signal monitor level from 0% to 100% in 1% steps.	50% (default)	
See p. 87 for details.		
3 BeeP(Confirmation)		
A beep sounds each time a switch is pushed to con- firm it. This function can be turned OFF for silent op- eration.	<b>DN</b> Confirmation beep ON (default)	<b>UFF</b> Confirmation beep OFF
The volume level can be set described below.		
4 BeeP(Band Ed9e)		
A beep sounds when an operating frequency enters or exits an amateur band. This functions independent of the confirmation beep setting (above).	미시 Band edge beep ON (default)	<b>DFF</b> Band edge beep OFF
The volume level can be set described below.		
5BeeP Level		
This item adjusts the volume level for (confirmation and band edge) beep tones from 0% to 100% in 1% steps. When beep tones are turned OFF, this setting has no effect.	<b>5</b> 0%	<b> 50%</b> 6 (default)
6 Beep Level Limit		
This item allows you to set a maximum volume level for (confirmation and band edge) beep tones. The beep tones are linked to the <b>[AF]</b> control until a spec-	<b>ON</b> Beep level is limited with	OFF Beep level is linked to [AF]

[AF] (default)

## Miscellaneous (others) set mode (continued)

7 RF/SQL Control	DEACO		ontrol on DE/oqualab acetral	
The <b>[RF/SQL]</b> control can be set as the RF/squelch control (default), the squelch control only (RF gain is	RF+SQL SQL	[RF/SQL] control as RF/squelch control [RF/SQL] control as squelch control		
fixed at maximum) or 'Auto' (RF gain control in SSB, CW and RTTY; squelch control in AM and FM).	AUTO		ontrol as RF gain control in SSB,	
		CW and RT	CW and RTTY; squelch control in AM and	
See pgs. 1, 35 for details.	FM (default)		)	
8Quick SPLIT				
When this item is set to ON, pushing and holding [F-1	미시 Quick split ON (default)		OFF	
<b>SPL]</b> (M-1) for 1 sec. sets the undisplayed VFO frequency to the displayed VFO frequency plus the split offset and activates split operation.			Quick split OFF	
See p. 90 for details.				
9 SPLIT Offset				
This item sets the offset (difference between transmit and receive frequencies) for the quick split function.	<b>0.000 MHz</b> 0.000 MHz offset (default)		−9 <b>.</b> 999MHz Minus 9.999 MHz offset	
The offset frequency can be set from –9.999 MHz to +9.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps.				
10 SPLIT LOCK				
When this item is ON, [DIAL] can be used to adjust	미시 Split lock function ON		OFF	
the transmit frequency while pushing and holding <b>[XFC]</b> even while the lock function is activated.			Split lock function OFF (default)	
See p. 89 for split frequency operation details.				
11 DUP Offset HF				
This item sets the offset (difference between transmit	0 100MU-			
and receive frequencies) for duplex operation. How- ever, this setting is used to input the repeater offset for an HF band only.	0.1 MHz offset (default)			
The offset frequency can be set from 0.000 MHz to +9.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps.				

# 12 DUP Offset 50M

This item sets the offset (difference between transmit and receive frequencies) for duplex operation. However, this setting is used to input the repeater offset for the 50 MHz band only.

The offset frequency can be set from 0.000 MHz to +9.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps.

**0. 500MHz** 0.5 MHz offset (default)

#### Miscellaneous (others) set mode (continued)

# 13 DUP Offset 144M

This item sets the offset (difference between transmit and receive frequencies) for duplex operation. However, this setting is used to input the repeater offset for an 144 MHz band only.

The offset frequency can be set from 0.000 MHz to +9.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps.

#### 14 DUP Offset 430M

This item sets the offset (difference between transmit and receive frequencies) for duplex operation. However, this setting is used to input the repeater offset for the 430 MHz band. only

The offset frequency can be set from 0.000 MHz to +9.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps.

#### 15 One Touch RePeater

This item turns the one touch repeater function ON (DUP-, DUP+) and OFF.

When [F-2 DUP] (M-3) is pushed and held for 1 sec., the selected offset direction and programmed duplex offset frequency (depending on the operating frequency band) is set with the displayed frequency.

#### 16 Auto Repeater

This item turns the auto repeater function ON-1 (auto duplex setting), ON-2 (auto duplex setting and activating tone encoder) or OFF.

See p. 65 for details concerning the auto repeater function.

#### 17 Tuner (Auto Start)

The optional AT-180 ANTENNA TUNER has an automatic start capability which starts tuning if the SWR is higher than 1.5–3:1.

When "OFF" is selected, the tuner remains OFF even when the SWR is poor (1.5-3:1). When "ON" is selected, automatic tune starts even when the tuner is turned OFF.

0.600MHz 0.6 MHz offset (default)

5.000MHz 5 MHz offset (default)

lected. (default)

DUP-

Minus offset direction is se- One touch repeater function is OFF.

ON-1 Auto duplex setting is ON. (default)

OFF

OFF

Auto repeater function is OFF.

13

0N OFF Automatic tune function is Automatic tune function is ON. OFF. (default)

Even when "ON" is selected, automatic tune does not start for the 50 MHz band.

Miscellaneous (others) set mode (continued)

	intaoay		
18 Tuner (PTT Start)			
When an optional AH-4 ANTENNA TUNER is connected,	ON		OFF
tuning can be started automatically at the moment the PTT is pushed.	Tuning starts when pushing [PTT] on a new frequency.		Tuning starts only when
This function activates for HF band only.			[TUNER] is pushed. (default)
19[TUNER] Switch			
When an optional AT-180 ANTENNA TUNER is con- nected, the transceiver retains the [TUNER/CALL]	Auto	[TUNER/CALL] key ON/OFF condition retained for each band. (default)	
key ON/OFF condition for each band, "Auto," or all band, "Manual."	Manual	[TUNER/CALL] key ON/OFF condition retained for all band.	
20 VSEND Select			
This item select the [ACC] (pin 7) output.	ON	VSEND is for the 144/430 MHz; HSEND is for the HF/50 MHz. (default)	
	UHF Only	VSEND is for the 430 MHz; HSEND is for the HF/50/144 MHz.	
	OFF	<b>OFF</b> VSEND is not used;	
		HSEND is t	for all bands.
21 SPEECH Level			
This item adjusts the volume level for speech function			」 50%
from 0% to 100% in 1% steps.			(default)
22 SPEECH Lan9ua9e			

This item selects language for the speech function.

You can select between English and Japanese as the SPEECH language.

# 23 SPEECH Speed

This item selects the speech speed between faster or slower synthesizer output.

English English announcement (default)

JaPanese Japanese announcement

HIGH LŪ Faster announcement Slov (default)

LOW Slower announcement

Miscellaneous (others) set mode (continued)

24 SPEECH S-Level			
You can have frequency, mode and signal level an- nouncement. Signal level announcement can be de- activated if desired.	ŪN Signal level announ (default)	<b>DFF</b> cement No signal level announcement	
When "OFF" is selected, the signal level is not an- nounced.			
25 SPEECH [MODE] Switch			
This item selects the operating mode speech capabil- ity when <b>[MODE]</b> is pushed.		OFF nounce- No operating mode an-	
When "ON" is selected, the selected operating mode is announced at pushing [MODE].	ment with [MODE]	nouncement with [MODE] (default)	
26 MemoPad Numbers			
This item sets the number of memo pad channels	5	10	
available. 5 or 10 memo pads can be set.	5 memo pads (default)	10 memo pads	
27 SCAN Speed			
This item sets the rate at which channels or frequen- cies are scanned during scan operations. High and	HIGH	LOW	
low can be selected.	Scan is faster. (default)	Scan is slower.	
28 SCAN Resume			
This item sets the scan resume function ON and OFF.	a	Scan resumes 10 sec. after stopping on a signal (or 2 sec. after a signal disap- per). (default) Scan does not resume after stopping on a signal. For the priority watch, setting to OFF pauses the watch until the signal disappears and scan resumes.	
	a C		
29 MAIN DIAL Auto TS	итси -		
This item sets the auto tuning step function. When ro- tating <b>[DIAL]</b> rapidly, the tuning step rate adapts as	Fa	Auto tuning step is turned ON. Fastest tuning step during rapid rotation (default)	
selected.			
There are 2 type of auto tuning steps: HIGH (Fastest) and LOW (Faster).		uto tuning step is turned ON. aster tuning step during rapid rotation	

13

30 HM-151 [F-1] This item programs one of several functions to [F-1] key of HM-151. Programmable key assignments are described as below.	MPU ANF Memo pad write is pro- Auto notch filter is pro- grammed. (default) grammed.
"P.AMP/ATT" (Preamplifier/attenuator), "NB" (Noise blanker), "NR" (Noise reduction), "MNF" (Manual notch filter), "ANF" (Auto notch filter), "TS" (Tuning step), "SPL" (Split operation), "A/B" (VCO A/B selection), "MCL" (Memory clear), "BNK" (Bank selection), "COM" (Speech compressor),	"AGC" (AGC selection), "TBW" (TX filter width), "DUP" (Duplexer), "TON" (FM tone operation), "MET" (Meter selection), "VSC" (Voice squelch control), "MPW" (Memo pad write), "MPR" (Memo pad read), " <scope>" (Scope selection), "<meter>" (Multi-meter selection)</meter></scope>

#### 31 HM-151 [F-2]

This item programs one of several functions to [F-2]	MPR	NB
key of HM-151. Programmable key assignments are same as above.	Memo pad read is pro- grammed. (default)	Noise blanker function is programmed.

#### 32 MIC UP/Down Speed

This item sets the rate at which frequencies are scanned when the microphone (HM-151) []/[V]keys are pushed and held. High or low can be selected.

#### 33 Quick RIT/dTX Clear

This item selects the RIT/ATX frequency clearing instruction for the [F-3 CLR] key.

See pgs. 73, 86 for details.

# HIGH

High speed (default, 5 tuning steps/sec.)

LOW.

Low speed (2.5 tuning steps/sec.)

ON. Clears the RIT///TX frequency when [F-3 CLR] is pushed momentarily.

#### OFF

Clears the RIT///TX frequency when [F-3 CLR] is pushed and held for 1 sec. (default)

## 34 SSB/CW Synchronous Tunin9

This item selects the displayed frequency shift function from ON and OFF.

When this function is activated, the received signal will remain the same even when the operating mode is changed between SSB and CW.

The frequency shifting value may differ according to the CW pitch setting.

#### ON.

The displayed frequency The displayed frequency shifts when the operating mode is changed between SSB and CW.

#### OFF

does not shift. (default)

# Miscellaneous (others) set mode (continued)

35 CW Normal Side		
Selects the carrier point of CW mode from LSB and USB.	LSB The carrier point is set to LSB side. (default)	USB The carrier point is set to USB side.
	(	
36 VOICE 1st Menu		
This item selects the initial menu when [F-1 VO] (S-1) is pushed, from "VOICE-RX/TX" or "VOICE-Root."	VOICE-RX/TX Voice RX/TX menu is se- lected. (default)	VOICE-Root. Voice root menu is selected.
37 KEYER 1st Menu		
This item selects the initial menu when [F-2 KEY]	KEYER-SEND	KEYER-Root
(S-1) is pushed, from "KEYER-SEND" or "KEYER-Root."	Keyer send menu is se- lected. (default)	Keyer root menu is selected.
38 DTMF 1st Menu		
This item selects the initial menu when [F-2 DTM] (S-1) is pushed, from "DTMF-SEND" or "DTMF- Root."	DTMF-SEND DTMF send menu is se- lected. (default)	DTMF-Root. DTMF root menu is se- lected.
39 Mode Select (SSB)		
This item inhibits the selection of SSB (LSB/USB)	ON	OFF
modes, and allows you to simplify operation during normal operation.	SSB modes are selectable. (default)	SSB modes are inhibited.
For example if you are operating mobile and only plan on using FM and AM modes, sets all other modes (SSB, CW, RTTY, WFM) to OFF, thereby making se- lection of AM or FM quick and easy.		
40 Mode Select (CW)		
This item inhibits the selection of CW/CW-R modes,	ON	OFF
and allows you to simplify operation during normal op- eration.	CW modes are selectable. (default)	CW modes are inhibited.
41 Mode Select (RTTY)		
This item inhibits the selection of RTTY/RTTY-R	ON	OFF
modes, and allows you to simplify operation during normal operation.	RTTY modes are selectable. (default)	RTTY modes are inhibited.

## 13 SET MODE

#### Miscellaneous (others) set mode (continued)

42 Mode Select (AM)		
This item inhibits the selection of AM mode, and al-	ON	OFF
lows you to simplify operation during normal opera- tion.	AM mode is selectable. (default)	AM mode is inhibited.
43 Mode Select (FM)		
This item inhibits the selection of FM mode, and al-	ON	OFF
lows you to simplify operation during normal opera- tion.	FM mode is selectable. (default)	FM mode is inhibited.
44 Mode Select. (WFM) This item inhibits the selection of WFM mode, and al- lows you to simplify operation during normal opera- tion.	미시 WFM mode is selectable. (default)	<b>OFF</b> WFM mode is inihibited.
45 External KeyPad (VOICE)		
This item sets the external keypad capability and function.	DN : Pushing one of external keypad switches, tran the desired voice memory contents (during a p mode (SSB, AM, FM) operation.	
<i>For your information</i> The following diagram shows the equivalent circuit of an external keypad and connects to the pin 2 and	OFF : External keypad doe (default)	es not function.
pin 7 of the [MIC] connector (p. 10).	If you want to transmit a message using the extend nal keypad descrived at left, you must set "4 Front KeyPad TyPe" (p. 136) to "Ex KeyPad," and record the desired message transmit voice memory channels T1-T4 in ac vance (p.96).	

#### 46 External KeyPad (KEYER)

USER EXTERNAL KEYPAD

This item sets the external keypad capability and function.

User external keypad is same as above.

- **ŪN** : Pushing one of external keypad switches, transmits the desired memory keyer contents during CW mode operation.
- **UFF** : External keypad does not function. (default)

If you want to transmit a memory keyer contents using the external keypad descrived above, you must set "47 Front KeyPad TyPe" (p. 136) to "Ext KeyPad."

### 47 Front KeyPad TyPe This item selects the keypad type that connected to Dot/Dash Ext KeyPad the [MIC] connector. Dot/Dash (default) External keypad 48 CI-V Baud Rate This item sets the data transfer rate. 300, 1200, 4800, 19200 Auto 9600, 19200 bps and "Auto" are available. Auto baud rate 19200 bps (default) When "Auto" is selected, the baud rate is automatically set according to the connected controller or remote controller. 49 CI-V Address To distinguish equipment, each CI-V transceiver has 70h 7Fh its own Icom standard address in hexadecimal code. Address of 70h Address of 7Fh The IC-7000's address is 70h. (default) When 2 or more IC-7000's are connected to an optional CT-17 CI-V LEVEL CONVERTER, rotate [DIAL] to select a different address for each IC-7000 in the range 01h to 7Fh. 50 CI-V Transceive Transceive operation is possible with the IC-7000 con-OFF 0N nected to other Icom HF transceivers or receivers. Transceive ON Transceive OFF (default) When "ON" is selected, changing the frequency, operating mode, etc. on the IC-7000 automatically changes those of connected transceivers (or receivers) and vice versa. 51 REF Adjust This item adjusts the internal reference frequency

within 0 to 100% range in 1 % steps.

# 14 MAINTENANCE

# ■ Fuse replacement

If a fuse blows or the transceiver stops functioning, try to find the source of the problem, and replace the damaged fuse with a new, adequately rated fuse.

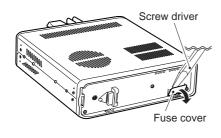
**CAUTION: Disconnect** the DC power cable from the transceiver when changing a fuse.

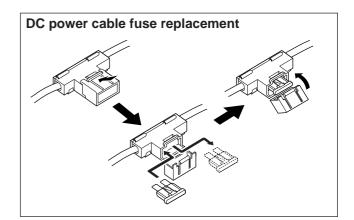
The IC-7000 has three fuses (DC power cable fuses × 2, circuitry fuse × 1) installed for transceiver protection. • DC power cable fuses ...... ATC20 30 A • Circuitry fuse ...... ATC20 5 A

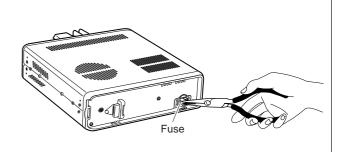
### CIRCUITRY FUSE REPLACEMENT

The 13.8 V DC from the DC power cable is applied to all units in the IC-7000, except for the power amplifier, through the circuitry fuse. This fuse is installed in the FRONT unit.

**WARNING: NEVER** attempt to remove fuse cover using your finger nails, this may result in injury.







# Memory backup

All of the CPU's memory is backed up by an EEP-ROM (Electronically-Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory). All data you set, such as VFO, memory, set mode contents, etc. are stored in this EEPROM. There is no internal lithium battery.

# ■ Cleaning



If the transceiver becomes dusty or dirty, wipe it clean with a dry, soft cloth.



**AVOID** the use of strong chemical solvents such as thinner, benzine or alcohol to clean the transceiver. These may damage the transceiver's surfaces.

The following chart is designed to help you correct problems which are not equipment malfunctions.

If you are unable to locate the cause of a problem or solve it through the use of this chart, contact your nearest loom Dealer or Service Center.

	PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION	REF.
۲.	Power does not come on when [PWR] key is pushed.	• DC power cable is improperly connected.	Reconnect the power cable correctly.	p. 19
POWER SUPPLY		• Fuse is blown.	<ul> <li>Check for the cause, then replace the fuse with a spare one.</li> <li>(Fuses are installed in two places. One is installed in the DC power cable and the other is installed in the FRONT unit.</li> </ul>	p. 137
ā.		• Battery is exhausted if you are using a 12 V battery as the power source.	<ul> <li>Check the battery voltage.</li> </ul>	_
	No sound comes from the speaker.	• Volume level is set too low.	<ul> <li>Rotate [AF] clockwise to obtain a suit- able listening level.</li> </ul>	pgs. 1, 25, 33
		<ul> <li>The squelch is closed.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Rotate [SQL] counterclockwise to open the squelch.</li> </ul>	pgs. 1, 25, 35
		• Release [PTT] on the microphone or check the SEND line of an external unit, if connected.	_	
			• Check the external speaker or head- phone plug connection.	p. 18
	Sensitivity is low.	• The antenna is not connected properly.	• Reconnect to the antenna connector.	_
ECEIVE	111		• Check the feed line and correct any improper conditions.	_
R		<ul> <li>The antenna is not properly tuned.</li> </ul>	• Push [TUNER/CALL] to manually tune the antenna.	pgs. 114, 115
		• The attenuator function is activated.	<ul> <li>Push [P.AMP/ATT] to turn the function OFF.</li> </ul>	p. 72
	Receive audio is distor- ted.	• The operating mode is not selected correctly.	<ul> <li>Select a suitable operating mode.</li> </ul>	p. 34
		<ul> <li>The PBT function is activated.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Push [PBT/M-ch/RIT(CLR)] for 1 sec. to clear the PBT function.</li> </ul>	p. 77
	Receive signal is distor- ted by strong signals.	<ul> <li>Noise blanker function is activated.</li> </ul>	Push [NB/ADJ] to turn the function OFF.	p. 78
		<ul> <li>Preamp is activated.</li> </ul>	• Push [P.AMP/ATT] to turn the function OFF.	p. 72

# 15 TROUBLESHOOTING

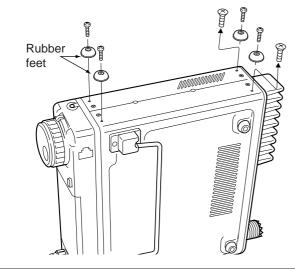
	PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION	REF.
	Transmitting is impossible.	• The operating frequency is not set to a ham band.	• Set the frequency to a ham band.	p. 29
	Output power is too low.	• Power is set to a lower power than maximum.	• Set the output power in quick set mode.	p. 38
		• Microphone gain is set too low.	• Set microphone gain to a suitable position using quick set mode.	p. 38
		• The antenna is not connected properly.	<ul> <li>Reconnect the antenna connector.</li> </ul>	—
		• The antenna feed line is cut or shorted.	• Check the feed line and correct any improper conditions.	—
		<ul> <li>The antenna is not properly tuned.</li> </ul>	• Push [TUNER/CALL] to manually tune the antenna.	pgs. 114, 115
	No contact possible with other stations.	• RIT function is activated.	• Push [F-1 RIT] in the RIT/⊿TX mode to turn the function OFF.	р. 73
_		<ul> <li>Split function is activated.</li> </ul>	• Push [F-1 SPL] in the M-1 menu to turn the function OFF.	p. 89
TRANSMIT	Repeater cannot be ac- cessed.	Split function is not activated.	<ul> <li>Push [F-1 SPL] in the M-1 menu to turn the function ON.</li> </ul>	p. 89
TRAI		<ul> <li>An incorrect transmit frequency is set.</li> </ul>	• Set the proper frequencies into VFO A and B or into one of the memory channels.	pgs. 27, 29
		• Subaudible tone encoder is OFF and repeater requires a tone for access.	● Use [F-3 T0N] in the M-3 menu to select FM-TONE.	p. 63
		• Programmed subaudible tone fre- quency is wrong.	• Program the required frequency using FM tone set mode.	p. 64
	Transmitted signals are	<ul> <li>Microphone gain is set too high.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Set MIC gain in quick set mode.</li> </ul>	p. 38
	distorted.	• The compression level is set too high with the speech compressor ON.	• Set compression level to a suitable position.	p. 88
ЧΑΥ	Displayed frequency does not change proper-	• The dial lock function is activated.	• Push [SPCH/LOCK] to deactivate the function.	p. 37
DISPL	ly.	<ul> <li>The internal CPU has malfunctioned.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Reset the CPU.</li> <li>(While pushing [▲(BAND)] and [▼(BAND)], push [PWR] to turn power ON.</li> </ul>	p. 25
	Programmed scan does not stop.	• Squelch is open.	• Set squelch to the threshold position.	p. 35
SCAN	Programmed scan does not start.	• The same frequencies have been programmed in scan edge memory channels.	<ul> <li>Program different frequencies into scan edge memory channels.</li> </ul>	p. 101
0)	Memory scan does not start.	• 2 or more memory channels have not been programmed.	Program 2 or more memory chan- nels.	p. 101
	Memory select scan does not start.	• 2 or more memory channels have not been designated as select channels.	• Designate 2 or more memory chan- nels as select channels for the scan.	p. 104

# OPTION UNITS SETTING 16

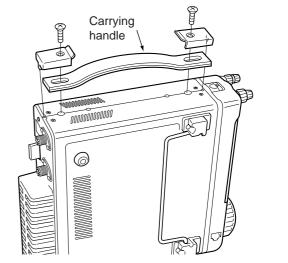
# **MB-106** CARRYING HANDLE

The optional MB-106 CARRYING HANDLE is convenient when carrying the transceiver for DX' peditions, field operation, etc.

① Attach the rubber feet with the supplied screws as shown below.



2 Attach the MB-106 to the left side of the transceiver as shown below.



# ■Band voltage modification

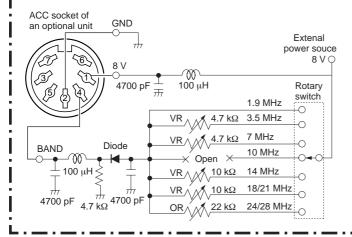
If you want to connect an external unit which can be controlled by the band voltage from **[ACC]** connector, the following modification is necessary. The band voltage appears on pin 5 of **[ACC]** connector after modification is completed.

Performing this modification is the customer's responsibility. Icom does not guarantee this modification's result.

**CAUTION:** Disconnect the DC power cable from the transceiver before any work on the transceiver.

### Band voltage generator circuit

The below circuit is just for reference.



IC-7000's top view with DDS unit top panel is opened  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$ Cooling fan  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$ 0 0 0 Front panel Bridge these solder pads 0 0 0 0 0  $\bigcirc$ 0

The following band voltage table is for reference only. Please adjust and confirm against the actual operating condition.

BAND	VOLTAGE
1.9 MHz	—
3.5 MHz	6.1 V
7 MHz	5.1 V
10 MHz	—
14 MHz	4.1 V
18/21 MHz	3.1 V
24/28 MHz	2.1 V

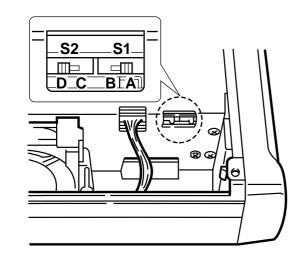
# ■ AT-180 internal switch description

The optional AT-180 has 3 operating configurations for HF band operation. Select a suitable configuration according to your antenna system.

- ① Remove the top cover of the AT-180.
- 2 Set the tuner switches to the desired positions according to the table below.

### AT-180 inside top cover

SW	Position	Operation	
	A (default)	The tuner operating condition is set by S2 described below.	
S1	В	THROUGH INHIBIT The tuner tunes the antenna even when th antenna has poor SWR (up to VSWR 3: after tuning). In this case, manual tuning in necessary each time you change the free quency although the tuner automaticall starts tuning when the VSWR is higher tha 3:1. This setting is called <i>"through inhibit</i> however, the tuner is set to <i>"through"</i> if the VSWR is higher than 3:1 after tuning.	
C The tuner tunes ea cept SSB mode). SWR is obtained a		TUNER SENSITIVE CONDITION The tuner tunes each time you transmit (ex- cept SSB mode). Therefore, the lowest SWR is obtained at any given time. For SSB mode, the same condition as the "D" position.	
	D (default)	NORMAL CONDITION The tuner tunes when the SWR is higher than 1.5:1. Therefore, the tuner activates only when tuning is necessary.	



### • Specifications for the AT-180

- Frequency coverage : 1.9-54 MHz
- Input impedance : 50 Ω : 120 W
- Maximum input
- power • Minimum tuning :8W
- power Matching impedance : 16.7–150 Ω (HF band)
- range  $20-125 \Omega$  (50 MHz band) Tuning accuracy
  - : Less than SWR 1.5:1 : Less than 1.0 dB
- Insertion loss
- Power supply requirements
- Dimensions (mm/in)

Weight

 $6^{9/16}(W) \times 2^{5/17}(H) \times 8^{7/8}(D)$ : 2.4 kg; 5 lb 4 oz

(after tuning)

- Supplied accessories : Coaxial cable (1 m),
  - ACC cable (DIN 13 pins)

: 13.8 V DC/1 A (supplied from

the transceiver's ACC socket)

 $: 167(W) \times 58.6(H) \times 225(D)$ 

## Connector information for ACC(2) socket



ulated 8 V output. mA max.)	
Connects to ground.	
Input/output pin. Goes to ground when transmitting (20 mA max). When grounded, transmits.	
Band voltage output. (Varies with amateur band; 0 to 8.0 V).	
coutput voltage (-4 to 0 V).	
connection.	
13.8 V output when power is ON (1 A max).	

# CONTROL COMMAND 17

# ■ Remote jack (CI-V) information

## CI-V connection example

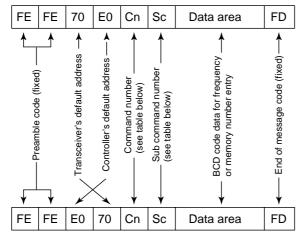
The transceiver can be connected through an optional CT-17 CI-V LEVEL CONVERTER to a personal computer equipped with an RS-232C port. The Icom Communication interface-V (CI-V) controls the following functions of the transceiver.

Up to four Icom CI-V transceivers or receivers can be connected to a personal computer equipped with an RS-232C port. See p. 136 for setting the CI-V condition using the miscellaneous (others) set mode.

## ♦ Data format

The CI-V system can be operated using the following data formats. Data formats differ according to command numbers. A data area is added for some commands.

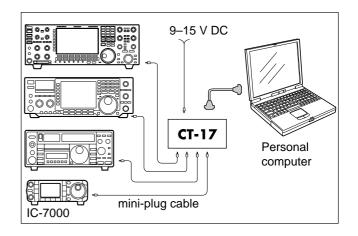
### CONTROLLER TO IC-7000



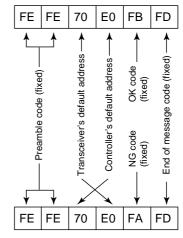
**IC-7000 TO CONTROLLER** 

### Command table

Command	Sub command	Description
00	-	Send frequency data
01	Same as command 06	Send mode data
02	_	Read band edge frequencies
03	_	Read operating frequency
04	_	Read operating mode
05	_	Set operating frequency
06	00	Select LSB
	01	Select USB
	02	Select AM
	03	Select CW
	04	Select RTTY
	05	Select FM
	07	Select CW-R
	08	Select RTTY-R
07	_	Select VFO mode
	00	Select VFO A
	01	Select VFO B
	A0	Equalize VFO A and VFO B
	1	1



### OK MESSAGE TO CONTROLLER



NG MESSAGE TO CONTROLLER

Command	Sub command	Description
07	B0	Exchange VFO A and VFO B
08	-	Select memory mode
	0001–0105*	Select memory channel *P1=0100, P2=0101
	0106, 0107	Select the call channel (C1=0106, C2=0107)
	A0	Set the bank number (1=A, 2=B, 3=C, 4=D, 5=E)
09	—	Memory write
0A	—	Memory to VFO
0B	—	Memory clear
0C	_	Read offset frequency
0D	-	Set offset frequency
0E	00	Scan stop
	01	Programmed/memory scan start
	02	Programmed scan start
	22	Memory scan start
	23	Select memory scan start

# •Command table (continued)

Command	Sub command	Description
0E	B0	Set as non-select channel
	B1	Set as select channel
	D0	Set scan resume OFF
	D3	Set scan resume ON
0F	00	Turn the split function OFF
	01	Turn the split function ON
	10	Select simplex operation
	11	Select –DUP operation
	12	Select +DUP operation
10	00	AM/FM/WFM modes:
		Select 10 Hz tuning step
		SSB/CW/RTTY modes: TS OFF
	01	Select 100 Hz tuning step
	02	Select 1 kHz tuning step
	03	Select 5 kHz tuning step
	04	Select 9 kHz tuning step
	05	Select 10 kHz tuning step
	06	Select 12.5 kHz tuning step
	07	Select 20 kHz tuning step
	08	Select 25 kHz tuning step
	09	Select 20 kHz tuning step
		·
	10	AM/FM/WFM modes:
		Select MHz step
11		SSB/CW/RTTY modes: Invalid
11	_	Select/read attenuator (0=OFF, 12=ON (12 dB))
		, ,,
13	00	Announce with voice synthesizer
	01	(00=all data; 01=frequency and
	02	S-meter level; 02=receive mode)
14	01 + Level data	[AF] level setting (0=max. CCW to
		255=max. CW)
	02 + Level data	[RF] level setting (0=max. CCW to 255=11 o'clock)
	03 + Level data	[SQL] level setting (0=11 o'clock to 255=max. CW)
	06 + Level data	NR level setting (0=min. to 255=max.)
	07 + Level data	Inside [PBT] setting or IF shift
		setting (0=max. CCW, 128=cen-
		ter, 255=max. CW)
	08 + Level data	Outside [PBT] setting
		(0=max. CCW, 128=center,
		255=max. CW)
	09 + Level data	CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz,
		128=600 Hz, 255=900 Hz, in 5 Hz
		steps)
	0A + Level data	RF Power setting (0=mini. to 255=max.)
	0B + Level data	MIC Gain setting (0=mini. to 255=max.)
	0C + Level data	Key Speed setting (0=slow to
	0D + Level data	255=fast) NOTCH (NF1) frequency setting
	0E + Level data	(0=low freq. to 255=high freq.) COMP Level setting (0=0 to
	0F + Level data	10=10) Break-IN DELAY setting (20=2.0d
	12 + Level data	to 130=13.0d) NB level setting (0=0 to
		255=100%)
	15 + Level data	Monitor gain setting (0=0 to 255=100%)
	16 + Level data	VOX gain setting (0=0 to 255=100%)
		,

<u> </u>		
Command	Sub command	Description
14	17 + Level data	Anti-VOX gain setting (0=0 to 255=100%)
	18 + Level data	Contrast (LCD) setting (0=0 to 255=100%)
	19 + Level data	Bright (LCD) setting (0=0 to 255=100%)
	1A + Level data	NOTCH (NF2) frequency setting (0=low freq. to 255=high freq.)
15	01	Read squelch condition
	02	Read S-meter level
	11	Read RF power meter
	12	Read SWR meter
	13 14	Read ALC meter Read COMP meter
16	02	Preamp (0=OFF; 1=ON)
10	12	AGC selection
	12	(1=Fast; 2=Mid; 3=Slow)
	22	Noise blanker (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	40	Noise reduction (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	41	Auto notch (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	42	Repeater tone (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	43	Tone squelch (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	44	Speech compressor (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	45	Monitor (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	46	VOX function (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	47	Break-in (0=OFF; 1=semi break- in; 2=full break-in)
	48	Manual notch (NF1) (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	4B	DTCS (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	4C	VSC (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	4F	Twin Peak Filter (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	50	Dial lock function (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	51	Manual notch (NF2) (0=OFF, 1=ON)
19	00	Read the transceiver ID
1A	00	Send/read memory contents (see p. 146 for details)
	01	Send/read band stacking register contents (see p. 146 for details)
	02	Send/read memory keyer contents (see p. 146 for details)
	03	Send/read the selected filter width
		(SSB, CW, RTTY:
		0=50 Hz to 40/31=3600/2700 Hz;
		AM: 0=200 Hz to 49=10 kHz)
	04	Send/read the selected AGC time constant (0=OFF, 1=0.1/0.3 sec. to
		13=6.0/8.0 sec.)
	050001	RF Power setting (0=mini. to 255=max.)
	050002	MIC Gain setting (0=mini. to
	050000	255=max.)
	050003	Send/read of SSB TX bandwidth (lower edge) for wide
		(0=100, 1=200, 2=300, 3=500 HZ)
	050004	Send/read of SSB TX bandwidth
		(higher edge) for wide (0=2500,
		1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)
	050005	Send/read of SSB TX bandwidth
		(lower edge) for middle
	050000	(0=100, 1=200, 2=300, 3=500 HZ)
	050006	Send/read of SSB TX bandwidth (higher edge) for middle (0=2500,
		1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)
		, , , /

# •Command table (continued)

Command         Sub command         Description           1A         050007         Send/read of SB TX bandwidth (lower edge) for narrow (0=2500, 1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)           050008         Send/read of SB TX bandwidth (lingher edge) for narrow (0=2500, 1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)           050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY wark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=100mal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min, to 255=60 WPM)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050016         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=talic)           050022         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=talic)           050023         Send/read filter pop up indication for PET shifting (0=0FF, 1=0N)           050024         Send/read filt			
(lower edge) for narrow           050008         Send/read of SSB TX bandwidth (higher edge) for narrow (0=2500, 1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)           050009         Twin Peak Filter (0=OFF; 1=ON)           050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CD ontrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=talic)           050021         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050022         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050023         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050024         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/rea	Command	Sub command	Description
(0=100, 1=200, 2=300, 3=500 HZ)           050008         Send/read of SSB TX bandwidth (higher edge) for narrow (0=2500, 1=270, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)           050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=107 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=00 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=0FF, 1=0N)           050016         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD ficker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for L=DN           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for L=DN           050027         Send/read filter pop	1A	050007	
050008         Send/read of SSB TX bandwidth (higher edge) for narrow (0=2500, 1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)           050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050022         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050023         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050024         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read pop up indication for hz MAPAATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)			
(higher edge) for narrow (0=2500, 1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)           050009         Twin Peak Filter (0=0FF; 1=0N)           050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY kint width (0=170 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=60 WPM)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050022         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050023         Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050024         Send/read fliter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read fliter pop up indication fo			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)           050009         Twin Peak Filter (0=OFF; 1=0N)           050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPIM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min, to 255=max.)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=0FF, 1=0N)           050016         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050021         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=tatic)           050023         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050024         Send/read filter pop up indication for IP B shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for IP Thilter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read pop up indication for hand/read filter pop up indication for hand/read pop		050008	
050009         Twin Peak Filter (0=OFF; 1=ON)           050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050012         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050013         Send/read CW ey pole d(0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read lcD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050023         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050024         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=talic)           050025         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read filter pop up indication for r IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read filter pop up indication for r IF fil			
050010         Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY shift width (0=170 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD ficker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD ficker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050022         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050023         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050024         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read filter pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)			1=2700, 2=2800, 3=2900 HZ)
(0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY shift width (0=170 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)           050012         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW rich setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=0FF, 1=0N)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read signay type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050022         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read filter pop up indication for 1Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for 1Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for 1Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read pop up indication for 1Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050009	Twin Peak Filter (0=OFF; 1=ON)
2=2125 Hz)           050011         Send/read RTTY shift width (0=170 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW side tone level (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD licker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read adisplay type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050025         Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read pop up indication for tharmed up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for tharmed up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050010	
050011       Send/read       RTTY shift width (0=170 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)         050012       Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)         050013       Send/read CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)         050015       Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)         050016       Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050017       Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)         050018       Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)         050019       Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)         050020       Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)         050021       Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)         050022       Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050023       Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050024       Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)         050025       Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050026       Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050027       Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050028       Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050029       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for pAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)			
(0=170 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)           050012         Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)           050013         Send/read CW speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050021         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read fliter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read fliter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read fliter pop up indication for Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read pop up indication for hzmade pop up indication for the TF inter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read fliter pop up indication for hzmade pop up indication for the zop up indication for hzmade pop up indication for the zop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON) <td< th=""><th></th><th></th><th></th></td<>			
050012       Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)         050013       Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)         050014       Send/read CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)         050015       Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)         050016       Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050017       Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)         050018       Send/read LCD bright (0=0% to 255=100%)         050019       Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)         050020       Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)         050021       Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050022       Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050023       Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)         050024       Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)         050025       Send/read fliter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050026       Send/read fliter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050027       Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050028       Send/read pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050029       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel		050011	
(0=Normal, 1=Reverse)050013Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)050014Send/read CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)050015Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)050016Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)050017Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)050018Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)050019Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)050020Send/read LCD licker level (0=0% to 255=100%)050021Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)050022Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font type (0=Romal, 1=Large)050025Send/read display font size (0=OrFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read TV pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read indication of the coice TX memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indicatio			
050013         Send/read CW key speed (0=0.6 WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050024         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050025         Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for PB shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read TV pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Sen		050012	
WPM to 255=60 WPM)           050014         Send/read CW Pitch setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD lint bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read pop up indication for Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indi			
050014         Send/read         CW         Pitch         setting (0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)         050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0%, 255=100%)         050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)         050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)         050021         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050023         Send/read display tont size (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050023         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050027           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050028           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031           050031         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032           050033         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050013	
(0=300 Hz, 120=900 Hz, in 5 Hz steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0%, 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read alsplay type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050024         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050025         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050032         Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read		050014	
steps)           050015         Send/read CW side tone level [0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read a switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050023         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050024         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050025         Send/read display font size (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read filter pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON) <th></th> <th>050014</th> <th></th>		050014	
050015         Send/read CW side tone level (0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050024         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050025         Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=CN)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=CN)           050027         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=CN)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read TV pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=CN)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=CN)           050031         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=CN)           050032         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=CN)			
(0=min. to 255=max.)           050016         Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050022         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050032         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/r		050015	· · · · · · / · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
050016       Send/read CW side tone level limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050017       Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)         050018       Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)         050019       Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)         050020       Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)         050021       Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)         050022       Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050023       Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)         050024       Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)         050025       Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050026       Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050027       Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050028       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050030       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTIMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		000015	
(0=OFF, 1=ON)           050017         Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)           050018         Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050035         Sen		050016	1-1
050017       Send/read LCD contrast (0=0% to 255=100%)         050018       Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)         050019       Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)         050020       Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)         050021       Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)         050022       Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)         050023       Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050024       Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)         050025       Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)         050025       Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050027       Send/read filter pop up indication for 1Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050028       Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050029       Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050030       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTIMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050016	
255=100%)050018Send/read LCD bright (0=0%, 255=100%)050019Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)050020Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)050021Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)050022Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read fliter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read fliter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050017	
050018         Send/read         LCD         bright         (0=0%, 255=100%)           050019         Send/read         LCD         unit bright         (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read         LCD         flicker level         (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read switch backlight         (0=0% to 255=100%)         (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read         display         font         type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read         display         font         size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050025         Send/read         filter         pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read         filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read         filter pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read         pop up indication for 1 kz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read         Tup up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read         Tup up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read         indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050032         Send/read         indication of the corce TX		050017	
255=100%)050019Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)050020Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)050021Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)050022Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting		050019	
050019         Send/read LCD unit bright (0=0% to 255=100%)           050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050025         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for ZOPC (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050032         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050018	5 ( )
to 255=100%)050020Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)050021Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)050022Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050010	+
050020         Send/read LCD flicker level (0=0% to 255=100%)           050021         Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)           050022         Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)           050023         Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)           050024         Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)           050025         Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050026         Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050027         Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050028         Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050029         Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050032         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050019	
to 255=100%)050021Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)050022Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting		050020	
050021       Send/read switch backlight (0=0% to 255=100%)         050022       Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)         050023       Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)         050024       Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)         050025       Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050026       Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050027       Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050028       Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050029       Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050030       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		030020	
to 255=100%)050022Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read indication of the DTMF		050021	
050022Send/read display type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		030021	ũ (
2=C)050023Send/read display font type (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050022	
050023Send/readdisplayfonttype (0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/readdisplayfontsize (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/readmeterpeakhold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/readfilterpopupindication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/readfilterpopupindication for IF filtersetting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/readpopupindication for 1F filterfilterpopupindication for 1 Hz050029Send/readpopupindication for scopecenter/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/readTVpopupindication for channelUp/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/readTVpopupindication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/readindicationof the voice TXmemory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/readindicationof the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/readindicationof the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/readsend/readindication			
(0=Basic, 1=Italic)050024Send/read display font size (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for PAMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050023	
050024Send/readdisplayfontsize (0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/readmeterpeakhold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/readfilter pop upindication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/readfilter pop upindication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop upindication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop upindication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop upindication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop upindication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting			
(0=Normal, 1=Large)050025Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050024	
050025       Send/read meter peak hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050026       Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050027       Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050028       Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050029       Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050030       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035       Send/read external display setting			
(0=OFF, 1=ON)050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting		050025	
050026Send/read filter pop up indication for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting			
for PBT shifting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting		050026	
050027Send/read filter pop up indication for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting			
for IF filter setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)050028Send/read pop up indication for 1 Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting		050027	Send/read filter pop up indication
Hz mode (0=OFF, 1=ON)050029Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)050030Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)050031Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)050032Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050033Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050034Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)050035Send/read external display setting			
050029       Send/read pop up indication for scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050030       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035       Send/read external display setting		050028	
scope center/fix (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050030         Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050031         Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050032         Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050035         Send/read external display setting			
050030       Send/read TV pop up indication for channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the brown of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035       Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050029	
channel Up/Down (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for         P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the voice         TX memory channel names         (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer         memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTMF         memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035       Send/read external display setting			
050031       Send/read TV pop up indication for P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035       Send/read external display setting		050030	
P.AMP/ATT (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050032       Send/read indication of the voice         TX       memory       channel       names         (0=OFF, 1=ON)       050033       Send/read indication of the keyer         memory       names       (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTMF         memory       names       (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035       Send/read external display setting			
050032       Send/read indication of the voice TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050033       Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050034       Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035       Send/read external display setting		050031	
TX memory channel names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050035         Send/read external display setting			
(0=OFF, 1=ON)           050033         Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050035         Send/read external display setting		050032	
050033         Send/read indication of the keyer memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050035         Send/read external display setting			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)           050034         Send/read indication of the DTMF           memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON)         050035           Send/read external display setting			*
050034 Send/read indication of the DTMF memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON) 050035 Send/read external display setting		050033	
memory names (0=OFF, 1=ON) 050035 Send/read external display setting		05000	
050035 Send/read external display setting		050034	
		050005	
(U=1:1.8, 1=1:1.6)		050035	
			(0=1.1.0, 1=1.1.0)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050036	Send/read opening message
		(0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050037	Send/read my call sign setting (10
		character: see p. 147)
	050038	Send/read power ON check
		(0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050039	Send/read current year (2000 to 2099)
	050040	Send/read current date (0101 to 1231=Jan. 1st to Dec. 31st)
	050041	Send/read current time (0000 to 2359=00:00 to 23:59)
	050042	Send/read clock2 function (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050043	Send/read offset time for clock2 function (24001 to 24000=-24:00
		to +24:00)
	050044	Send/read auto power OFF period (0=OFF, 1=30 min., 2=60 min., 3=90 min.)
	050045	Send/read TX monitor set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050046	Send/read TX monitor gain
		(0=0% to 255=100%)
	050047	Send/read confirmation beep
		(0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050048	Send/read band edge beep (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050049	Send/read beep gain (0=min. to 255=max.)
	050050	Send/read beep gain limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050051	Send/read RF/SQL control set (0=Auto, 1=SQL, 2=RF+SQL)
	050052	Send/read quick split set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050053	Send/read split offset -9.999 to
		+9.999 MHz (see p. 147 for de- tails)
	050054	Send/read split lock set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050055	Send/read duplex offset 0.000 to 9.999 MHz for HF (see p. 147 for details)
	050056	Send/read duplex offset 0.000 to 9.999 MHz for 50 MHz band (see p. 147 for details)
	050057	Send/read duplex offset 0.000 to 9.999 MHz for 144 MHz band
	050058	(see p. 147 for details) Send/read duplex offset 0.000 to 9.999 MHz for 430 MHz band (see p. 147 for details)
	050059	Send/read one touch repeater set (0=DUP-, 1=DUP+)
	050060	Send/read auto repeater set (0=OFF, 1=ON-1, 2=ON-2)
	050061	Send/read tuner auto start set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050062	Send/read PTT tune set (0=OFF, 1=ON)

CW: Clockwise, CCW: Counter Clockwise

# •Command table (continued)

Command 1A	Sub command 050063	Description Send/read [TUNER/CALL] key ac-
	000000	
		tion set (0=Manual, 1=Auto)
	050064	Send/read [ACC] (pin 7) output "VSEND" set (0=OFF, 1=UHF
		only, 2=ON)
	050065	Send/read speech level (0=0 to
		255=100%)
	050066	Send/read speech language
		(0=English, 1=Japanese)
	050067	Send/read speech speed (0=Slow, 1=Fast)
	050068	Send/read S-level speech
	050000	(0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050060	
	050069	Send/read speech capability with [MODE] key operation (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050070	Send/read memopad numbers (0=5 ch, 1=10 ch)
	050071	Send/read scan speed
		(0=Low, 1=High)
	050072	Send/read scan resume
		(0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050073	Send/read main dial auto TS
		(0=OFF, 1=Low, 2=High)
	050074	Send/read [F-1] key assigment of
		the HM-151. (0="P.AMP/ATT,"
		1="NB," 2="NR," 3="MNF,"
		4="ANF," 5="TS," 6="SPL,"
		7="A/B," 8="MCL," 9="BNK,"
		10="COM," 11="AGC," 12="TBW,"
		13="DUP," 14="TON," 15="MET,"
		16="VSC," 17="MPW," 18="MPR," 19=" <scope>," 20="<meter>")</meter></scope>
	050075	Send/read [F-2] key assigment of
	030073	the HM-151. (Selectable functions are same as [F-1].)
	050076	Send/read mic. up/down speed
	030070	(0=Low, 1=High)
	050077	Send/read quick RIT///TX clear
	050077	function (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050078	Send/read SSB/CW synchronous tuning function (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050079	Send/read CW normal side set
	050000	(0=LSB, 1=USB)
	050080	Send/read voice recorder 1st menu set (0=Voice-root, 1=Voice-
		RX/TX)
	050081	Send/read keyer 1st menu set
		(0=Keyer-root, 1=Keyer-send)
	050082	Send/read DTMF 1st menu set (0=DTMF-root, 1=DTMF-send)
	050083	Send/read SSB mode selectability
		(0=OFF: inhibition, 1=ON: selec- table)
	050084	Send/read CW mode selectability
	00004	(0=OFF: inhibition, 1=ON: selec-
		table)
	050085	Send/read RTTY mode selectabil- ity. (0=OFF: inhibition, 1=ON: se-
		lectable)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050087	Send/read FM mode selectability
		(0=OFF: inhibition, 1=ON: selec- table)
	050088	Send/read WFM mode selectabil- ity (0=OFF: inhibition, 1=ON: se- lectable)
	050089	Send/read external keypad set for voice memory (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050090	Send/read external keypad set for keyer memory (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050091	Send/read external keypad type connected to [MIC] connector of controller (0=Dot/Dash type, 1=Ext Keypad)
	050092	Send/read CI-V transceive set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050093	Send/read reference frequency set (0=0 to 255=100%)
	050094	Send/read speech compresser level (0=0 to 10=10)
	050095	Send/read auto voice monitor set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050096	Send/read MIC memo function (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050097	Send/read contest number style (0=Normal, 1=190 $\rightarrow$ ANO, 2=190 $\rightarrow$ ANT, 3=90 $\rightarrow$ NO, 4=90 $\rightarrow$ NT)
	050098	Send/read count up trigger chan- nel (1=M1, 2=M2, 3=M3, 4=M4)
	050099	Send/read present number (1–9999)
	050100	Send/read CW keyer repeat time (1=1 sec. to 60=60 sec.)
	050101	Send/read CW keyer dot/dash ratio (28=1:1:2.8 to 45=1:1:4.5)
	050102	Send/read rise time (0=2 msec., 1=4 msec., 2=6 msec., 3=8 msec.)
	050103	Send/read CW paddle polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)
	050104	Send/read CW keyer type (0=Straight, 1=Bug-key, 2=ELEC- Key)
	050105	Send/read MIC up/down keyer (HM-103) set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050106	Send/read RTTY decode USOS (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050107	Send/read RTTY decode new line code (0=CR,LF,CR+LF, 1=CR+LF)
	050108	Send/read scope max. hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050109	Send/read scope size set (0=Nor- mal, 1=Wide)
	050110	Send/read fast sweep set (0=1 sweep, 1=Continuous)
	050111	Send/read fast sweep audio level (0=0 dB, 1=-10 dB, 2=OFF)
	050112	Send/read NB level set (0=min. to 255=max.)
	050113	Send/read NB width set (0=min. to 255=max.)

## Command table (continued)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050114	Send/read NR level set (0=0 to 15=15)
	050115	Send/read VOX gain (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050116	Send/read anti VOX gain (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050117	Send/read VOX delay (0=0.0 sec. to 20=2.0 sec.)
	050118	Send/read DTMF speed set (0=100 msec., 1=200 msec., 2=300 msec., 3=500 msec.)
	050119	Send/read Break-IN delay set (20=2.0d to 130=13.0d)
06		Send/read SSB transmit band- width (0=WIDE, 1=MID, 2=NAR)
07		Send/read DSP filter shape (0= sharp, 1= soft)
08		Send/read manual notch filter1 bandwidth (0=WIDE, 1=MID, 2=NAR)
09		Send/read manual notch filter2 bandwidth (0=WIDE, 1=MID, 2=NAR)
0A		Send/read 9600 bps mode set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
1B	00	Set/read repeater tone frequency (see p. 147 for details)
	01	Set/read TSQL tone frequency (see p. 147 for details)
	02	Set/read DTCS code and polarity (see p. 147 for details)
1C	00	Set/read the transceiver's condi- tion (0=Rx; 1=Tx)
	01	Set/read antenna tuner condition (0=OFF, 1=ON, 2=Start tuning or while tuning)

CW: Clockwise, CCW: Counter Clockwise

## To send/read memory contents

When sending or reading memory contents, an additional code as follows must be added to specify the memory channel.

→ Additional code: 0000-0102 (0100=P1, 0101=P2, 0102=Call)

Band stacking register To send or read the desired band stacking register's contents, a combination of the frequency band and register codes as follows are used.

For example, when sending/reading the oldest contents in the 21 MHz band, the code "0703" is used.

### • Frequency band codes

Code	Frequency band	Frequency range (unit: MHz)
01	1.8	1.800000- 1.999999
02	3.5	3.400000- 4.099999
03	7	6.900000- 7.499999
04	10	9.900000-10.499999
05	14	13.900000-14.499999
06	18	17.900000-18.499999
07	21	20.90000-21.499999
08	24	24.400000-25.099999
09	28	28.00000-29.999999
10	50	50.00000-54.00000
11	144	144.000000-148.000000
12	430	430.00000-450.00000
13	GENE	Other than above

### •Register codes

Code	Register number
01	1 (latest)
02	2
03	3 (oldest)

### Codes for memory keyer contents

To send or read the desired memory keyer contents, the channel and character codes as follows are used.

### Channel codes

Code	Channel number
01	M1
02	M2
03	M3
04	M4

### Character codes

Character	ASCII code	Description
0–9	30–39	Numerals
A–Z	41–5A	Alphabetical characters
space	20	Word space
/	2F	Symbol
?	3F	Symbol
,	2C	Symbol
	2E	Symbol
۸	5E	e.g., to send $\overline{BT}$ , enter ^4254
*	2A	Inserts contact number (can be used for 1 channel only)

17

	5
ASCII code	Description
30–39	Numerals
41–5A	Alphabetical characters
20	Word space
2D	Symbol
2E	Symbol
2F	Symbol
	30–39 41–5A 20 2D 2E

## Character codes for My Call

### Codes for memory name contents

To send or read the desired memory name settings, the character codes, instruction codes for memory keyer contents as above, and the following are used.

### Character codes— Alphabetical characters

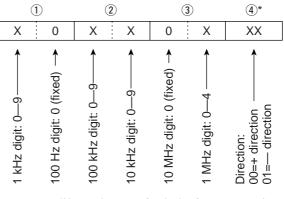
Character	ASCII code	Character	ASCII code
a–z	61–7A	_	—

### Character codes— Symbols

Character	ASCII code	Character	ASCII code
!	21	#	23
\$	24	%	25
&	26	¥	5C
?	3F	22	22
,	27	``	60
+	2B	-	2D
:	ЗA	,	3B
=	3D	<	3C
>	3E	(	28
)	29	]	5B
]	5D	{	7B
}	7D	I	7C
_	5F	_	7E
@	40		

## Split/Duplex frequency setting

The following data sequence is used when sending/reading the split or duplex frequency setting.



\*No need to enter for duplex frequency setting.

# Repeater tone/tone squelch frequency setting

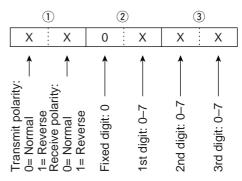
The following data sequence is used when sending/reading the DTCS code and polarity setting.

1)*	2	3
0 0	X X	X X
Fixed digit: 0* — > Fixed digit: 0* — >	100Hz digit: 0−2 → 10 Hz digit: 0−9 →	1 Hz digit: 0–9> 0.1 Hz digit: 0–9>

\*Not necessary when setting a frequency.

### ♦ DTCS code and polarity setting

The following data sequence is used when sending/reading the DTCS code and polarity setting.



# SPECIFICATIONS 18

# General

• Frequency coverage :		
Receive		
30 kHz-199.999999 MHz*1*2		
400-470.00000	00 MHz*1*2	
Transmit		
1.800-1.99999	9 MHz <sup>*2</sup> , 3.500–3.999999 MHz <sup>*2</sup>	
5.33050*3, 5.34	650*³, 5.36650*³, 350*³,	
7.000–7.300 M	Hz <sup>*2</sup> , 10.100–10.150 MHz <sup>*2</sup> ,	
	MHz <sup>*2</sup> , 18.068–18.168 MHz <sup>*2</sup> ,	
21.000-21.450	MHz <sup>*2</sup> , 24.890–24.990 MHz <sup>*2</sup> ,	
28.000-29.700	MHz <sup>*2</sup> , 50.000–54.000 MHz <sup>*2</sup> ,	
	00 MHz <sup>*2</sup> , 430.000-450.000 MHz <sup>*2</sup>	
*1Some frequency ba	nds are not guaranteed.	
*2Depending on version	on. *3USA version only.	
•Mode	: SSB, CW, RTTY, AM, FM, WFM	
	(WFM is for receive only)	
Number of memory CH	: 503 (split memory: 99×5 banks; scan	
· · · · · , ·	edges: 6; call channel: 2 ) channels	
<ul> <li>Antenna connector</li> </ul>	: SO-239×2 (for HF/50 MHz and	
	144/430 MHz) /50 Ω	
<ul> <li>Usable temperature</li> </ul>	: -10°C to +60°C (+14°F to +140°F)	
range		
<ul> <li>Frequency stability</li> </ul>	: Less than ±0.5 ppm	
	(0°C to +50°C; +32°F to +122°F)	
<ul> <li>Power supply</li> </ul>	: 13.8 V DC±15% (negative ground)	
requirement		
<ul> <li>Current drain</li> </ul>	: Transmit (at 100 W) 22 A	
(at 13.8 V DC)	Receive squelched 1.3 A	
	max. audio 1.6 A	
<ul> <li>Dimensions</li> </ul>	: 167(W)×58(H)×180(D) mm,	
(projections not included	l) 6%16(W)×2%2(H)×7%2(D) in	
<ul> <li>Weight (approx.)</li> </ul>	: 2.3 kg (5 lb 1 oz)	
<ul> <li>CI-V connector</li> </ul>	: 2-conductor 3.5 (d) mm (1/8")	
<ul> <li>Video connector</li> </ul>	: 2-conductor 3.5 (d) mm (1/8")	
<ul> <li>ACC connector</li> </ul>	: 13-pin	
<ul> <li>Data connector</li> </ul>	: 6-pin	

# ■ Transmitter

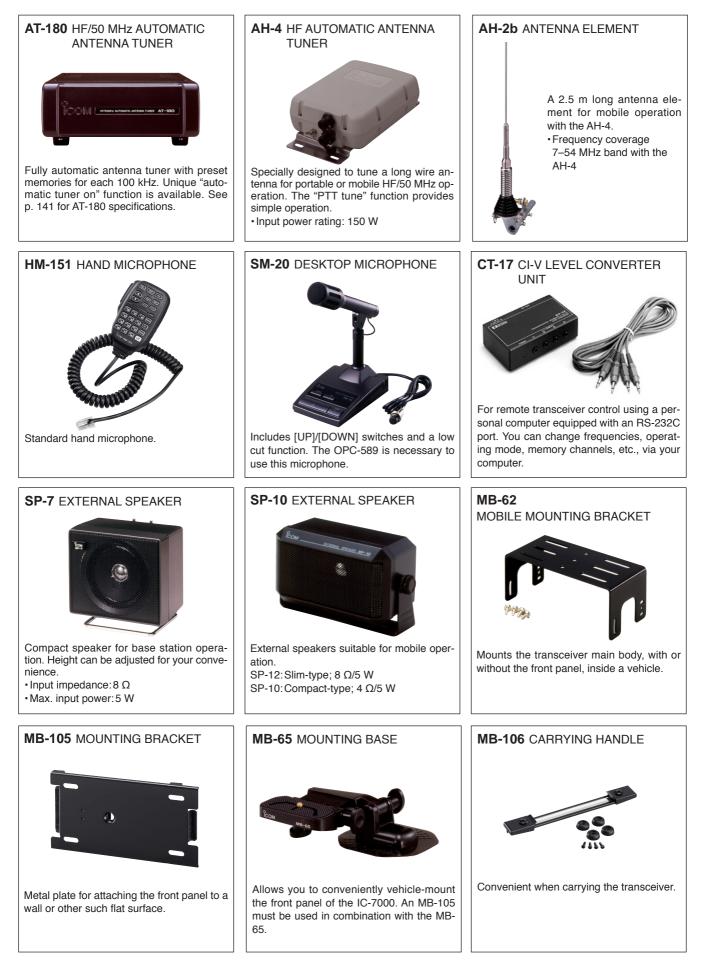
<ul> <li>Output power</li> </ul>	:
SSB, CW, FM, RTTY	′ 2–100 W (1.8–50 MHz bands)
	2–50 W (144 MHz band)
	2–35 W (430 MHz band)
AM	1–40 W (1.8–50 MHz bands)
	2–20 W (144 MHz band)
	2–14 W (430 MHz band)
<ul> <li>Modulation system</li> </ul>	:
SSB	Balanced modulation
AM	Low level modulation
FM	Variable reactance modulation
<ul> <li>Spurious emissions</li> </ul>	: Less than –60 dB*
*spurious freq.: below 30	MHz –50 dB, above 50 MHz –60 dB
<ul> <li>Carrier suppression</li> </ul>	: More than 50 dB
<ul> <li>Unwanted sideband</li> </ul>	: More than 50 dB
Microphone     connector	: 8-pin modular jack (600 Ω)
	: 3-conductor 6.35 (d) mm (1/4")
•RTTY connector	: 3-conductor 3.5 (d) mm ( <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> ″)

# Receiver

	er			
<ul> <li>Receive system</li> </ul>				
SSB/CW/RTTY/AM/FM Triple-conversion superheterodyne				
WFM Double-conversion superheterodyne				
<ul> <li>Intermediate fr</li> </ul>	equencies:			
1st				
SSB/CW/F WFM	RTTY/AM/F	M 124.48 134.73		
2nd		104.70		
	RTTY/AM/F	M 455 kH	Iz	
WFM		10.700		
3rd				
SSB/CW/F	RTTY/AM/F	M 16.15	кНz	
<ul> <li>Sensitivity (at p</li> </ul>	oreamp ON):			
Frequency	SSB/CW/			
range	RTTY			
[MHz]	10 dB S/N	10 dB S/N	12 dB SINAD	12 dB SINAD
0.5–1.8	-	13 µV	-	-
1.8–28	0.15 μV	2.0 μV	—	—
28–29.995	0.15 µ V	2.0 μ ν	0.5 μV	—
50 MHz band	0.12 <i>µ</i> V	1.0 <i>µ</i> V	0.25 μV	_
76–108	—	_	—	10.0 μV
144/430 MHz bands	0.11 μV	1.0 <i>µ</i> V	0.18 μV	_
Squelch sensit				
SSB FM		ess than 5.6		
• Selectivity		ess than 0.3	ο μ v	
SSB* (BW=2.4	1 kHz) M	ore than 2	4 kHz/–6 dE	3
000 (000-2.5	,		60 kHz/–60 d	
CW* (BW=500			0 Hz/–6 dE	
			0 Hz/–60 d	
RTTY (BW=35	50 Hz) M	ore than 36	0 Hz/–6 dE	}
	Le	ess than 65	0 Hz/–60 d	В
AM (BW=6 kH	/		) kHz/–6 dE	
			.0 kHz/–60	
FM (BW=15 kH	,		.0 kHz/–6 o	
			.0 kHz/–60	
*IF filter shape is set to SHARP. •Spurious and image rejection ratio:				
HF bands			dB	
HF bandsMore than 70 dB50 MHz bandMore than 70 dB (except IF/2 through)				
144/430 MHz			dB (except	
Audio output p				
• Audio output power : More than 2.0 W at 10% distortion with an 8 Ω load (at 13.8 V DC)				
<ul> <li>RIT variable ratio</li> </ul>	inge :±9	.99 kHz		
<ul> <li>PHONES conr</li> </ul>	• PHONES connector : 3-conductor 3.5 (d) mm ( $\frac{1}{6}$ )/8 $\Omega$			
• EXT SP connector : 2-conductor 3.5 (d) mm ( $\frac{1}{3}$ )/8 $\Omega$				

# 17 18

# **OPTIONS**



# OPTIONS 19

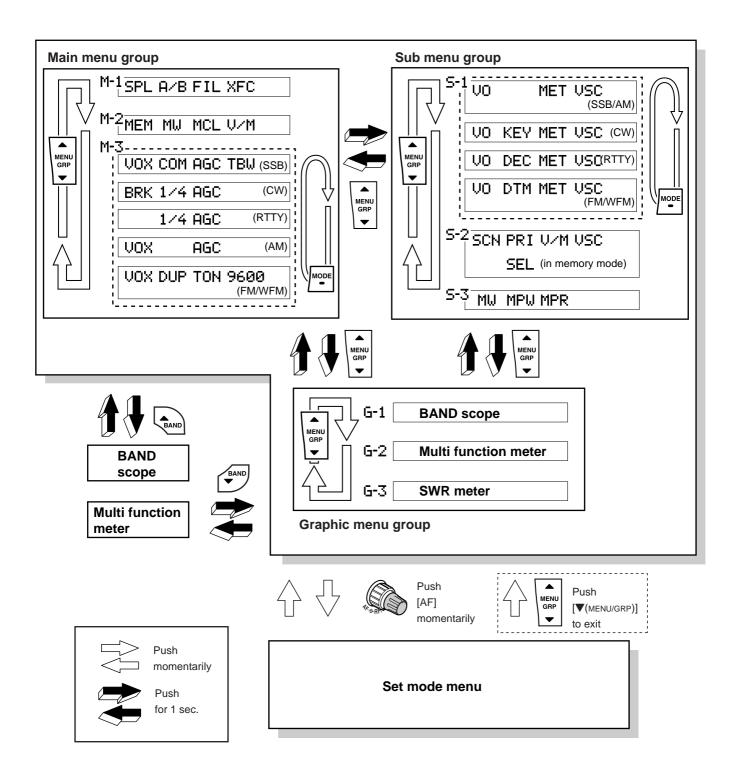


Full-duty 1 kW linear amplifier including an automatic antenna tuner. Has automatic tuning and band selection capability. Full break-in (QSK) operation is possible. The amplifier/power supply unit and the remote control unit are separated. An optional OPC-599 is required for

connection.

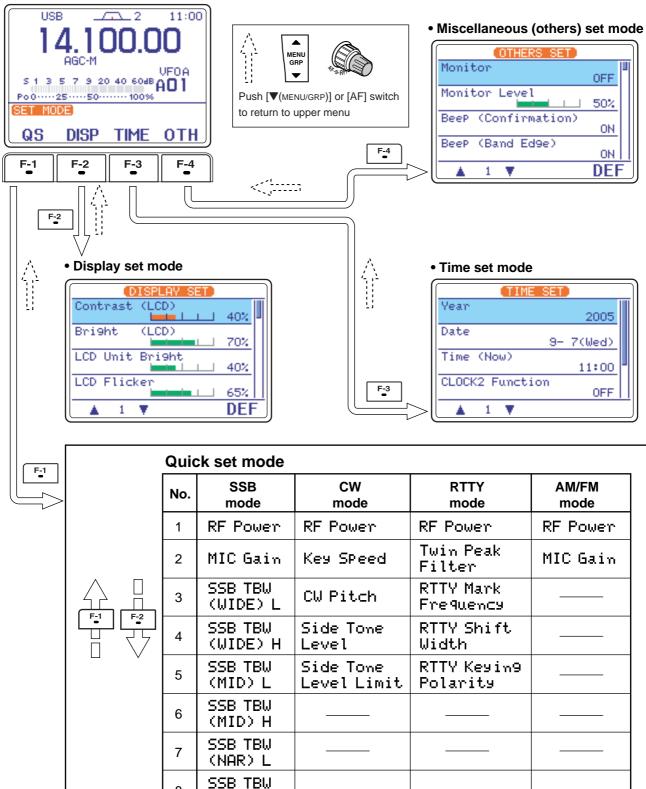
# 19

# 20 MENU GUIDE



# Set mode description

### Set mode menu



8

(NAR) H

MEMO	


MEMO	


Count on us!

Icom Inc. 1-1-32 Kamiminami, Hirano-ku, Osaka 547-0003, Japan